



# Specification

BTEC Firsts

Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design

For first teaching September 2010

Issue 2



## **Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications**

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications are awarded by Pearson, the UK's largest awarding body offering academic and vocational qualifications that are globally recognised and benchmarked. For further information, please visit our qualifications website at [qualifications.pearson.com](http://qualifications.pearson.com). Alternatively, you can get in touch with us using the details on our contact us page at [qualifications.pearson.com/contactus](http://qualifications.pearson.com/contactus)

## **About Pearson**

Pearson is the world's leading learning company, with 35,000 employees in more than 70 countries working to help people of all ages to make measurable progress in their lives through learning. We put the learner at the centre of everything we do, because wherever learning flourishes, so do people. Find out more about how we can help you and your learners at [qualifications.pearson.com](http://qualifications.pearson.com)

This specification is Issue 2. Key changes are listed in the summary table on the next page. We will inform centres of any changes to this issue. The latest issue can be found on the Pearson website: [qualifications.pearson.com](http://qualifications.pearson.com)

This qualification was previously known as:  
Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design (QCF)  
The QN remains the same.

*References to third party material made in this specification are made in good faith. Pearson does not endorse, approve or accept responsibility for the content of materials, which may be subject to change, or any opinions expressed therein. (Material may include textbooks, journals, magazines and other publications and websites.)*

*All information in this specification is correct at time of publication.*

ISBN 9781446957356

All the material in this publication is copyright  
© Pearson Education Limited 2017

## Summary of Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design specification Issue 2 changes

Summary of changes made between previous Issue 1 and this current Issue 2	Page number
All references to the following have been removed from the specification, as these qualifications have expired: 500/7101/4 - Pearson BTEC Level 2 Certificate in Art and Design (QCF) 500/7105/1 - Pearson BTEC Level 2 Extended Certificate in Art and Design (QCF)	Throughout
All references to QCF have been removed throughout the specification	Throughout
Definition of TQT added	3
Definition of sizes of qualifications aligned to TQT	3
TQT value added	7
QCF references removed from unit titles and unit levels in all units	19-272
Guided learning definition updated	17

Earlier issue(s) show(s) previous changes.

If you need further information on these changes or what they mean, contact us via our website at: [qualifications.pearson.com/en/support/contact-us.html](https://qualifications.pearson.com/en/support/contact-us.html).

# Contents

<b>BTEC First qualification title covered by this specification</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>What are BTEC Firsts?</b>	<b>2</b>
Sizes of qualifications	3
Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma – 60 credits	4
Key features of the BTEC Firsts in Art and Design	4
Rationale for the BTEC Firsts in Art and Design	4
National Occupational Standards	6
<b>Rules of combination for Pearson BTEC Level 2 First qualifications</b>	<b>7</b>
Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design	8
<b>Assessment and grading</b>	<b>9</b>
Grading domains	9
<b>Calculation of the qualification grade</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Quality assurance of centres</b>	<b>11</b>
Approval	11
<b>Programme design and delivery</b>	<b>12</b>
Mode of delivery	13
Resources	13
Delivery approach	13
Meeting local needs	14
Limitations on variations from standard specifications	14
Functional Skills	14
Personal, learning and thinking skills	14

## **Access and recruitment 15**

Restrictions on learner entry	15
Access arrangements and special considerations	15
Recognition of Prior Learning	16

## **Unit format 16**

Unit title	16
Level	16
Credit value	16
Guided learning hours	17
Aim and purpose	17
Unit introduction	17
Learning outcomes	17
Unit content	17
Assessment and grading grid	18
Essential guidance for tutors	18

## **Units 19**

Unit 1:	Contextual References in Art and Design	21
Unit 2:	2D Visual Communication	37
Unit 3:	3D Visual Communication	49
Unit 4:	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	61
Unit 5:	Building an Art and Design Portfolio	75
Unit 6:	Working in the Art and Design Industry	85
Unit 7:	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	97
Unit 8:	Working with Photography Briefs	111
Unit 9:	Working With Fashion Design Briefs	125
Unit 10:	Working with Textiles Briefs	141
Unit 11:	Working with 3D Design Briefs	155
Unit 12:	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	167
Unit 13:	Working with VisualArts Briefs	183

Unit 14: Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	201
Unit 15: Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs	219
Unit 16: Working with Accessory Briefs	233
Unit 17: Working with Moving Image Briefs	245
Unit 18: Working with Site-specific Briefs	259

## **Further information and useful publications 273**

How to obtain National Occupational Standards	274
---	-----

## **Professional development and training 275**

### **Annexe A 277**

The Pearson BTEC qualification framework for the Art and Design sector	277
--	-----

### **Annexe B 279**

Grading domains: BTEC Level 2 generic grading domains	279
---	-----

### **Annexe C 281**

Personal, learning and thinking skills	281
--	-----

### **Annexe D 287**

Wider curriculum mapping	287
--------------------------	-----

### **Annexe E 291**

National Occupational Standards/mapping with NVQs	291
---	-----

### **Annexe F 293**

BTEC First in Art and Design legacy (specification end date 31/08/2010)/ BTEC First in Art and Design new (specification start date 01/09/2009) – unit mapping overview	293
---	-----

BTEC First in Art and Design legacy (specification end date 31/08/2010)/ BTEC First in Art and Design new (specification start date 01/09/2009) – unit mapping in depth	295
---	-----

### **Annexe G 297**

Examples of calculation of qualification grade above pass grade	297
---	-----

Points available for credits achieved at different levels and unit grades	297
---	-----



# BTEC First qualification title covered by this specification

## Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design

Qualifications eligible and funded for post-16-year-olds can be found on the funding Hub. The Skills Funding Agency also publishes a funding catalogue that lists the qualifications available for 19+ funding.

The Qualification Number (QN) should be used by centres when they wish to seek public funding for their learners. Each unit within a qualification will also have a unit code.

The qualification and unit codes will appear on learners' final certification documentation. The QN for the qualification in this publication is:

Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design

500/7104/X

This qualification title will appear on learners' certificates. Learners need to be made aware of this when they are recruited by the centre and registered with Pearson.

# What are BTEC Firsts?

BTEC First qualifications are undertaken in further education and sixth-form colleges, schools and other training providers, and have been since they were introduced in 1983. Their purpose, approaches to teaching, learning and assessment are established and understood by teaching professionals, employers and learners alike.

The BTEC First qualification within this specification is:

Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design.

But for clarity and continuity they are referred to generically as BTEC First qualifications, where appropriate and maintain the same equivalences, benchmarks and other articulations (for example SCAAT points) as their predecessor qualifications.

BTEC Firsts are Level 2 qualifications designed to provide specialist work-related qualifications in a range of sectors. They give learners the knowledge, understanding and skills that they need to prepare for employment. The qualifications also provide career development opportunities for those already in work. Consequently they provide a course of study for full-time or part-time learners in schools, colleges and training centres.

BTEC Firsts provide much of the underpinning knowledge and understanding for the National Occupational Standards for the sector, where these are appropriate. They are supported by the relevant Standards Setting Body (SSB) or Sector Skills Council (SSC). A number of BTEC Firsts are recognised as Technical Certificates and form part of the Apprenticeship Framework. They attract achievement and attainment points that equate to similar-sized general qualifications.

On successful completion of a BTEC First qualification, learners can progress to or within employment and/or continue their study in the same, or related vocational area.

## Sizes of qualifications

---

For all regulated qualifications, Pearson specify a total number of hours that it is estimated learners will require to complete and show achievement for the qualification - this is the Total Qualification Time (TQT). The TQT value indicates the size of a qualification.

Within the TQT, Pearson identifies the number of Guided Learning Hours (GLH) that we estimate a centre delivering the qualification might provide. Guided learning means activities, such as lessons, tutorials, online instruction, supervised study and giving feedback on performance, that directly involve tutors and assessors in teaching, supervising and invigilating learners. Guided learning includes the time required for learners to complete external assessment under examination or supervised conditions.

In addition to guided learning, other required learning directed by tutors or assessors will include private study, preparation for assessment and undertaking assessment when not under supervision, such as preparatory reading, revision and independent research.

As well as TQT and GLH, qualifications can also have a credit value - equal to one tenth of TQT, rounded to the nearest whole number.

TQT and credit values are assigned after consultation with users of the qualifications.

BTEC qualifications are generally available in the following sizes:

- Award - a qualification with a TQT value of 120 or less (equivalent to a range of 1-12 credits)
- Certificate - a qualification with a TQT value in the range of 121-369 (equivalent to a range of 13-36 credits)
- Diploma - a qualification with a TQT value of 370 or more (equivalent to 37 credits and above).



## Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma – 60 credits

---

The 60-credit BTEC Level 2 Diploma has potential to prepare learners for employment in the appropriate vocational sector and it is suitable for those who have decided that they wish to enter a particular area of work. It is broadly equivalent to four GCSEs.

Some learners may wish to gain the qualification in order to enter a specialist area of employment or to progress to a Level 3 programme.

## Key features of the BTEC Firsts in Art and Design

---

The BTEC Firsts in Art and Design have been developed in the art and design sector to:

- provide education and training for those who work or are intending to work in the art and design industries
- give opportunities for those who work or are intending to work in the art and design sector to achieve a nationally recognised Level 2 vocationally specific qualification
- give full-time learners the opportunity to enter employment in the art and design sector or to progress to vocational qualifications such as the Pearson BTEC Level 3 Nationals in Art and Design
- give learners the opportunity to develop a range of skills and techniques, personal skills and attributes essential for successful performance in working life.

## Rationale for the BTEC Firsts in Art and Design

---

The specification has been developed with reference to the emerging view of the art and design sector, as reflected by the Sector Qualification Strategies of three Sector Skills Councils, Creative and Cultural Skills, Skillset and Skillfast-UK. The revised specification also includes more detailed signposting to new and revised National Occupational Standards (NOS).

The Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design aim to provide education and training in the art and design sector primarily for those learners in full-time education, who are seeking progression either into employment or onto further study. The art and design sector has a majority entering employment at graduate level.

The qualification aims to provide a broad-based approach to the art and design sector, with mandatory *Unit 1: Contextual References in Art and Design*, *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication* giving learners the opportunity to acquire and hone visual communication skills and techniques using a wide range of media and materials. *Unit 4: Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design* focuses on the production of outcomes, a partial element in all other units. *Unit 5: Building an Art and Design Portfolio* gives learners opportunities to focus on building a portfolio for progression, while *Unit 6: Working in the Art and Design Industry* gives learners opportunities to develop knowledge of the art and design sector.

Units 7 to 18 are specialist units, allowing for specialisation within a specific area of the art and design sector and provide the opportunity for sustained and in-depth exploration of a chosen field. Many of these units have content which could be linked to other specialist units, with *Unit 15: Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs*, *Unit 17: Working with Moving Image Briefs* and *Unit 18: Working with Site-specific Briefs* offering very flexible opportunities for linked working.

The mandatory 2D and 3D units are designed to complement the more specialist optional units, for example *Unit 8: Working with Photography Briefs for 2D* and *Unit 11: Working with 3D Design Briefs for 3D*.

The vocational context of the qualification is key to effective delivery, and this is provided through project briefs and assignments. Project briefs and assignments are best written in conjunction with practising artists, designers or craftspeople and forging links with local professionals is strongly recommended in order to provide a strong, vocational focus. There is an emphasis on developing skills, knowledge and understanding through the practice of art and design.

## National Occupational Standards

---

BTEC Firsts are designed to provide much of the underpinning knowledge and understanding for the National Occupational Standards (NOS), as well as developing practical skills in preparation for work and possible achievement of NVQs in due course. NOS form the basis of National Vocational Qualifications (NVQs). BTEC Firsts do not purport to deliver occupational competence in the sector, which should be demonstrated in a work context.

Each unit in the specification identifies links to elements of the NOS.

Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design relate to the following NOS suites:

- **CCSkills Sector Skills Council**
  - ◇ Design (revisions in draft form June 2009)
- **Skillset Sector Skills Council**
  - ◇ Animation
  - ◇ Interactive Media and Computer Games
  - ◇ Design for the Moving Image
  - ◇ Photo Imaging
- **Skillfast-UK Sector Skills Council**
  - ◇ Textiles and Material Design.

# Rules of combination for Pearson BTEC Level 2 First qualifications

The rules of combination specify the:

- total credit value of the qualification
- the minimum credit to be achieved at the level or above the level of the qualification
- the mandatory unit credit
- the optional unit credit
- the maximum credit that can come from other BTEC units.

When combining units for a BTEC First qualification, it is the centre's responsibility to ensure that the following rules of combination are adhered to.

## Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma

- 1 The Total Qualification Time (TQT) for this qualification is 600.
- 2 This qualification has 360 guided learning hours (GLH).
- 3 Qualification credit value: a minimum of 60 credits.
- 4 Minimum credit to be achieved at, or above, the level of the qualification: 31 credits.
- 5 Mandatory unit credit: 40 credits.
- 6 Optional unit credit: 20.
- 7 A maximum of 5 optional credits can come from other BTEC units to meet local needs.

## Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design

The Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design is a 60-credit and 360-guided-learning-hour (GLH) qualification that consists of six mandatory units **plus** optional units that provide for a combined total of 60 credits (where at least 31 credits must be at Level 2 or above).

Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma in Art and Design			
Unit	Mandatory units	Credit	Level
1	Contextual References in Art and Design	10	2
2	2D Visual Communication	5	2
3	3D Visual Communication	5	2
4	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	10	2
5	Building an Art and Design Portfolio	5	2
6	Working in the Art and Design Industry	5	2
Unit	Optional units		
7	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	10	2
8	Working with Photography Briefs	10	2
9	Working with Fashion Design Briefs	10	2
10	Working with Textiles Briefs	10	2
11	Working with 3D Design Briefs	10	2
12	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	10	2
13	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	10	2
14	Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	10	2
15	Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs	10	2
16	Working with Accessory Briefs	10	2
17	Working with Moving Image Briefs	10	2
18	Working with Site-specific Briefs	10	2

# Assessment and grading

In BTEC Firsts all units are internally assessed.

All assessment for BTEC First qualifications is criterion referenced, based on the achievement of all the specified learning outcomes.

Each unit within the qualification has specified assessment and grading criteria which are to be used for grading purposes. A summative unit grade can be awarded at pass, merit or distinction:

- to achieve a 'pass' a learner must have satisfied **all** the pass assessment criteria
- to achieve a 'merit' a learner must additionally have satisfied **all** the merit grading criteria
- to achieve a 'distinction' a learner must additionally have satisfied **all** the grading distinction criteria.

## Grading domains

The assessment and grading criteria are developed in relation to grading domains which are exemplified by a number of indicative characteristics at the level of the qualification.

There are four BTEC First grading domains:

- application of knowledge and understanding
- development of practical and technical skills
- personal development for occupational roles
- application of generic skills.

Please refer to *Annexe B* which shows the merit and distinction indicative characteristics.

### Guidance

The purpose of assessment is to ensure that effective learning has taken place to give learners the opportunity to:

- meet the assessment and grading criteria and
- achieve the learning outcomes within the units.

All the assignments created by centres should be reliable and fit for purpose, and should be built on the unit assessment and grading criteria. Assessment tasks and activities should enable learners to produce valid, sufficient and reliable evidence that relates directly to the specified criteria. Centres should enable learners to produce evidence in a variety of different forms, including written reports, graphs and posters, along with projects, performance observation and time-constrained assessments.

Centres are encouraged to emphasise the practical application of the assessment and grading criteria, providing a realistic scenario for learners to adopt, and making maximum use of practical activities and work experience. The creation of assignments that are fit for purpose is vital to achievement and their importance cannot be over-emphasised.

The assessment and grading criteria must be clearly indicated in the fit-for-purpose assignments. This gives learners focus and helps with internal verification and standardisation processes. It will also help to ensure that learner feedback is specific to the assessment and grading criteria.

When looking at the unit assessment and grading criteria grids and designing assignments, centres are encouraged to identify common topics and themes.

The units include guidance on appropriate assessment methodology. A central feature of vocational assessment is that it allows for assessment to be:

- current, ie to reflect the most recent developments and issues
- local, ie to reflect the employment context of the delivering centre
- flexible to reflect learner needs, ie at a time and in a way that matches the learner's requirements so that they can demonstrate achievement.

## Calculation of the qualification grade

### Pass qualification grade

Learners who achieve the minimum eligible credit value specified by the rule of combination will achieve the qualification at pass grade (see *Rules of combination for Pearson BTEC Level 2 First qualifications*).

### Qualification grades above pass grade

Learners will be awarded a merit or distinction or distinction\* qualification grade by the aggregation of points gained through the successful achievement of individual units. The number of points available is dependent on the unit level and grade achieved, and the credit size of the unit (as shown in the 'points available for credits achieved at different levels and unit grades' below).

### Points available for credits achieved at different levels and unit grades

The table below shows the number of points scored per credit at the unit level and grade.

Unit level	Points per credit		
	Pass	Merit	Distinction
Level 1	3	4	5
Level 2	5	6	7
Level 3	7	8	9

Learners who achieve the correct number of points within the ranges shown in the 'qualification grade' table will achieve the qualification merit or distinction or distinction\* grade.

### Qualification grade

Qualification	Points range above pass grade		
	Merit	Distinction	Distinction*
BTEC Level 2 Certificate	85-94	95-99	100 and above
BTEC Level 2 Extended Certificate	170-189	190-199	200 and above
BTEC Level 2 Diploma	340-379	380-399	400 and above

Please refer to *Annexe G* for examples of calculation of qualification grade above pass grade.

# Quality assurance of centres

Pearson's qualification specifications set out the standard to be achieved by each learner in order to be awarded the qualification. This is covered in the statement of learning outcomes, and assessment and grading criteria in each unit. Further guidance on delivery and assessment is given in the *Essential guidance for tutors* section in each unit. This section is designed to provide additional guidance and amplification related to the unit to support tutors, deliverers and assessors and to provide for a coherence of understanding and a consistency of delivery and assessment.

## Approval

Centres that have not previously offered BTEC qualifications will first need to apply for, and be granted, centre approval before they can apply for approval to offer the programme.

When a centre applies for approval to offer a BTEC qualification they are required to enter into an approvals agreement.

The approvals agreement is a formal commitment by the head or principal of a centre to meet all the requirements of the specification and any linked codes or regulations. Sanctions and tariffs may be applied if centres do not comply with the agreement. Ultimately, this could result in the suspension of certification or withdrawal of approval.

Centres will be allowed 'accelerated approval' for a new programme where the centre already has approval for a programme that is being replaced by the new programme.

The key principles of quality assurance are that:

- a centre delivering BTEC programmes must be an approved centre and must have approval for programmes or groups of programmes that it is operating
- the centre agrees as part of gaining approval to abide by specific terms and conditions around the effective delivery and quality assurance of assessment; it must abide by these conditions throughout the period of delivery
- Pearson makes available to approved centres a range of materials and opportunities intended to exemplify the processes required for effective assessment and examples of effective standards. Approved centres must use the materials and services to ensure that all staff delivering BTEC qualifications keep up to date with the guidance on assessment
- an approved centre must follow agreed protocols for standardisation of assessors and verifiers; planning, monitoring and recording of assessment processes; and for dealing with special circumstances, appeals and malpractice.

The approach of quality assured assessment is made through a partnership between an approved centre and Pearson. Pearson is committed to ensuring that it follows best practice and employs appropriate technology to support quality assurance processes where practicable. Therefore, the specific arrangements for working with centres will vary. Pearson seeks to ensure that the quality assurance processes that it uses do not place undue bureaucratic processes on centres and works to support centres in providing robust quality assurance processes.

Pearson monitors and supports centres in the effective operation of assessment and quality assurance. The methods which it uses to do this for BTEC First and National programmes include:

- ensuring that all centres have completed appropriate declarations at the time of approval, undertaking approval visits to centres where necessary
- requiring all centres to appoint a Lead Internal Verifier for designated groups of programmes and to ensure that this person is trained and supported in carrying out that role
- requiring that the Lead Internal Verifier completes compulsory online standardisation related to assessment and verification decisions for the designated programme
- assessment sampling and verification, through requested samples of assessments, completed assessed learner work and associated documentation
- overarching review and assessment of a centre's strategy for assessing and quality assuring its BTEC programmes.

#### **Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook**

Centres should refer to the *Handbook for Quality Assurance for BTEC Qualifications*, issued annually, for detailed guidance.

An approved centre must make certification claims only when authorised by Pearson and strictly in accordance with requirements for reporting.

Centres that do not fully address and maintain rigorous approaches to quality assurance will be prevented from seeking certification for individual programmes or for all BTEC First and National programmes. Centres that do not comply with remedial action plans may have their approval to deliver qualifications removed.

---

## **Programme design and delivery**

---

BTEC First qualifications consist of mandatory units and optional units. Optional units are designed to provide a focus to the qualification and give more specialist opportunities in the sector.

In BTEC Firsts each unit has a number of guided learning hours.

Guided learning hours are defined as all the times when a tutor, trainer or facilitator is present to give specific guidance towards the learning aim being studied on a programme. This definition includes lectures, tutorials and supervised study in, for example, open learning centres and learning workshops. It also includes time spent by staff assessing learners' achievements. It does not include time spent by staff in day-to-day marking of assignments where the learner is not present.

Centres are advised to consider this definition when planning the programme of study associated with this specification.

## Mode of delivery

---

Pearson does not define the mode of study for BTEC Firsts. Centres are free to offer the qualifications using any mode of delivery (such as full time, part time, evening only, distance learning) that meets their learners' needs. Whichever mode of delivery is used, centres must ensure that learners have appropriate access to the resources identified in the specification and to the subject specialists delivering the units. This is particularly important for learners studying for the qualification through open or distance learning.

Learners studying for the qualification on a part-time basis bring with them a wealth of experience that should be utilised to maximum effect by tutors and assessors. The use of assessment evidence drawn from learners' work environments should be encouraged. Those planning the programme should aim to enhance the vocational nature of the qualification by:

- liaising with employers to ensure a course relevant to learners' specific needs
- accessing and using non-confidential data and documents from learners' workplaces
- including sponsoring employers in the delivery of the programme and, where appropriate, in the assessment
- linking with company-based/workplace training programmes
- making full use of the variety of experience of work and life that learners bring to the programme.

## Resources

---

BTEC Firsts are designed to prepare learners for employment in specific occupational sectors. Physical resources need to support the delivery of the programme and the proper assessment of the learning outcomes and should, therefore, normally be of industry standard. Staff delivering programmes and conducting the assessments should be familiar with current practice and standards in the sector concerned. Centres will need to meet any specific resource requirements to gain approval from Pearson.

Where specific resources are required these have been indicated in individual units in the *Essential resources* sections.

## Delivery approach

---

It is important that centres develop an approach to teaching and learning that supports the specialist vocational nature of BTEC First qualifications and the mode of delivery. Specifications give a balance of practical skill development and knowledge requirements, some of which can be theoretical in nature. Tutors and assessors need to ensure that appropriate links are made between theory and practical application and that the knowledge base is applied to the sector. This requires the development of relevant and up-to-date teaching materials that allow learners to apply their learning to actual events and activity within the sector. Maximum use should be made of the learner's experience.

An outline learning plan is included in every unit as guidance which demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of the unit. The outline learning plan can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

Where the qualification has been designated and approved as a Technical Certificate and forms part of an Apprenticeship scheme, particular care needs to be taken to build strong links between the learning and assessment for the BTEC First qualification and the related NVQs and Functional Skills that also contribute to the scheme.

## Meeting local needs

---

Centres should note that the qualifications set out in this specification have been developed in consultation with centres and employers and the Sector Skills Councils or the Standards Setting Bodies for the relevant sector. Centres should make maximum use of the choice available to them within the optional units to meet the needs of their learners, and local skills and training needs.

In certain circumstances, units in this specification might not allow centres to meet a local need. In this situation, Pearson will ensure that the rule of combination allows centres to make use of units from other standard BTEC specifications. Centres are required to ensure that the coherence and purpose of the qualification is retained and to ensure that the vocational focus is not diluted.

## Limitations on variations from standard specifications

---

The flexibility to import standard units from other BTEC Firsts is limited to a total of 25 per cent of the qualification credit value (see *Rules of combination for Pearson BTEC Level 2 First qualifications*).

These units cannot be used at the expense of the mandatory units in any qualification.

## Functional Skills

---

BTEC Firsts give learners opportunities to develop and apply Functional Skills.

Functional Skills are offered as stand-alone qualifications at Level 2. See individual units for opportunities to cover ICT, Mathematics and English Functional Skills.

## Personal, learning and thinking skills

---

Opportunities are available to develop personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) within a sector-related context. PLTS are identified in brackets after the unit pass criteria to which they are associated and they are also mapped in *Annexe C*. Further opportunities for learners to demonstrate these skills may also be apparent as learners progress throughout their learning.

# Access and recruitment

Pearson's policy regarding access to its qualifications is that:

- they should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards
- they should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression
- there should be equal opportunities for all wishing to access the qualifications.

Centres are required to recruit learners to BTEC qualifications with integrity. This will include ensuring that applicants have appropriate information and advice about the qualifications and that the qualification will meet their needs. Centres should take appropriate steps to assess each applicant's potential and make a professional judgement about their ability to successfully complete the programme of study and achieve the qualification. This assessment will need to take account of the support available to the learner within the centre during their programme of study and any specific support that might be necessary to allow the learner to access the assessment for the qualification. Centres should consult Pearson's policy on learners with particular requirements.

Centres will need to review the entry profile of qualifications and/or experience held by applicants, considering whether this profile shows an ability to progress to a Level 2 qualification. For learners who have recently been in education, the profile is likely to include one of the following:

- a BTEC Level 1 qualification in Art and Design or a related vocational area
- a standard of literacy and numeracy supported by a general education equivalent to four GCSEs at grade D-G
- other related Level 1 qualifications
- related work experience.

More mature learners may present a more varied profile of achievement that is likely to include experience of paid and/or unpaid employment.

## Restrictions on learner entry

Most BTEC First qualifications are accredited for learners aged 14 years and over.

In particular sectors the restrictions on learner entry might also relate to any physical or legal barriers, for example people working in health, care or education are likely to be subject to police checks.

Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts are listed on the DCSF funding lists Section 96 and Section 97.

## Access arrangements and special considerations

Pearson's policy on access arrangements and special considerations for BTEC and Edexcel NVQ qualifications aims to enhance access to the qualifications for learners with disabilities and other difficulties (as defined by the Equality Act 2010) without compromising the assessment of skills, knowledge, understanding or competence.

Further details are given in the policy document *Access Arrangements and Special Considerations for BTEC and Edexcel NVQ Qualifications*, which can be found on the Pearson website ([qualifications.pearson.com](http://qualifications.pearson.com)). This policy replaces the previous Pearson policy (Assessment of Vocationally Related Qualification: Regulations and Guidance Relating to Learners with Special Requirements, 2002) concerning learners with particular requirements.

## Recognition of Prior Learning

---

Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) is a method of assessment (leading to the award of credit) that considers whether a learner can demonstrate that they can meet the assessment requirements for a unit through knowledge, understanding or skills they already possess and so do not need to develop through a course of learning.

Pearson encourages centres to recognise learners' previous achievements and experiences whether at work, home and at leisure, as well as in the classroom. RPL provides a route for the recognition of the achievements resulting from continuous learning.

RPL enables recognition of achievement from a range of activities using any valid assessment methodology. Provided that the assessment requirements of a given unit or qualification have been met, the use of RPL is acceptable for accrediting a unit, units or a whole qualification. Evidence of learning must be sufficient, reliable and valid.

## Unit format

---

All units in Pearson BTEC Level 2 First qualifications have a standard format. The unit format is designed to give guidance on the requirements of the qualification for learners, tutors, assessors and those responsible for monitoring national standards.

Each unit has the following sections.

### Unit title

---

The unit title is the formal title of the unit that will appear on the learner's certificate.

### Level

---

All units and qualifications have a level assigned to them. The level assigned is informed by the level descriptors defined by Ofqual, the qualifications regulator.

### Credit value

---

In BTEC First qualifications each unit consists of a credit value; learners will be awarded credits for the successful completion of whole units.

A credit value specifies the number of credits that will be awarded to a learner who has achieved all the learning outcomes of the unit.

## Guided learning hours

---

Guided Learning Hours (GLH) is the number of hours that a centre delivering the qualification needs to provide. Guided learning means activities that directly or immediately involve tutors and assessors in teaching, supervising, and invigilating learners, for example lectures, tutorials, online instruction and supervised study.

## Aim and purpose

---

The aim provides a clear summary of the purpose of the unit and is a succinct statement that summarises the learning outcomes of the unit.

## Unit introduction

---

The unit introduction gives the reader an appreciation of the unit in the vocational setting of the qualification, as well as highlighting the focus of the unit. It gives the reader a snapshot of the unit and the key knowledge, skills and understanding gained while studying the unit. The unit introduction also highlights any links to the appropriate vocational sector by describing how the unit relates to that sector.

## Learning outcomes

---

Learning outcomes state exactly what a learner should ‘know, understand or be able to do’ as a result of completing the unit.

## Unit content

---

The unit content identifies the breadth of knowledge, skills and understanding needed to design and deliver a programme of learning to achieve each of the learning outcomes. This is informed by the underpinning knowledge and understanding requirements of the related NOS. The content provides the range of subject material for the programme of learning and specifies the skills, knowledge and understanding required for achievement of the pass, merit and distinction grading criteria.

Each learning outcome is stated in full and then the key phrases or concepts related to that learning outcome are listed in italics followed by the subsequent range of related topics.

### Relationship between content and assessment criteria

The learner must have the opportunity within the delivery of the unit to cover all of the unit content.

It is not a requirement of the unit specification that all of the content is assessed. However, the indicative content will need to be covered in a programme of learning in order for learners to be able to meet the standard determined in the assessment and grading criteria. The merit and distinction grading criteria enable the learner to achieve higher levels of performance in their acquisition of knowledge, understanding and skills.

### Content structure and terminology

The information below shows the unit content is structured and gives the terminology used to explain the different components within the content.

- Learning outcome: this is shown in bold at the beginning of each section of content.

- **Italicised sub-heading:** it contains a key phrase or concept. This is content which must be covered in the delivery of the unit. Colons mark the end of an italicised sub-heading.
- **Elements of content:** the elements are in plain text and amplify the sub-heading. The elements must be covered in the delivery of the unit. Semi-colons mark the end of an element.
- **Brackets** contain amplification of elements of content which must be covered in the delivery of the unit.
- **'eg'** is a list of examples, used for indicative amplification of an element (that is, the content specified in this amplification could be covered or could be replaced by other, similar material).

## Assessment and grading grid

Each grading grid gives the assessment and grading criteria used to determine the evidence that each learner must produce in order to receive a pass, merit or distinction grade. It is important to note that the merit and distinction grading criteria require a qualitative improvement in a learner's evidence and not simply the production of more evidence at the same level.

## Essential guidance for tutors

This section gives tutors additional guidance and amplification to aid understanding and a consistent level of delivery and assessment. It is divided into the following sections.

- *Delivery* - explains the content's relationship with the learning outcomes and offers guidance about possible approaches to delivery. This section is based on the more usual delivery modes but is not intended to rule out alternative approaches.
- *Outline learning plan* - the outline learning plan demonstrates has been included in every unit as guidance and demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of a unit. The outline learning plan can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.
- *Assessment* - gives amplification about the nature and type of evidence that learners need to produce in order to pass the unit or achieve the higher grades. This section should be read in conjunction with the grading criteria.
- *Suggested programme of assignments* - the table shows how the suggested assignments match and cover the assessment grading criteria.
- *Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications* - sets out links with other units within the qualification. These links can be used to ensure that learners make connections between units, resulting in a coherent programme of learning. The links show opportunities for integration of learning, delivery and assessment.
- *Essential resources* - identifies any specialist resources needed to allow learners to generate the evidence required for each unit. The centre will be asked to ensure that any requirements are in place when it seeks approval from Pearson to offer the qualification.
- *Employer engagement and vocational contexts* - gives a short list of agencies, networks and other useful contacts for employer engagement and for sources of vocational contexts.
- *Indicative reading for learners* - gives a list of learner resource material that benchmarks the level of study.

# Units

Unit 1:	Contextual References in Art and Design	21
Unit 2:	2D Visual Communication	37
Unit 3:	3D Visual Communication	49
Unit 4:	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	61
Unit 5:	Building an Art and Design Portfolio	73
Unit 6:	Working in the Art and Design Industry	83
Unit 7:	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	95
Unit 8:	Working with Photography Briefs	109
Unit 9:	Working With Fashion Design Briefs	123
Unit 10:	Working with Textiles Briefs	139
Unit 11:	Working with 3D Design Briefs	153
Unit 12:	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	165
Unit 13:	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	181
Unit 14:	Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	199
Unit 15:	Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs	217
Unit 16:	Working with Accessory Briefs	231
Unit 17:	Working with Moving Image Briefs	243
Unit 18:	Working with Site-specific Briefs	257



# Unit 1: Contextual References in Art and Design

Unit code: J/502/4819

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

This unit aims to develop learners' ability to research and explore different aspects of art, craft and design from contemporary, historical and cultural sources. Learners will use their contextual understanding to inform and inspire their ongoing creative work. They will develop their skills of presentation through organising and displaying their research findings.

## ● Unit introduction

Artists, designers and craftspeople need to keep up to date with contemporary and historical creative and cultural developments in order to communicate their ideas effectively. A large part of this revolves around the study of artworks but also includes social, political and technological developments and their impact on art, craft and design.

In this unit, learners will develop their skills of research across a wide variety of information and references, providing inspiration for originating and developing their own ideas. They will develop their understanding of how to select, organise and record relevant images and information. Learners will need to recognise ways in which their contextual research can help the development of their own practical skills in their ongoing studies. Learners will need to produce evidence of research from first-hand experience, where possible. This might involve working with professional practitioners and visiting galleries, museums and exhibitions. Learners will need to collate images from these and other sources such as books, DVD, CDRoms, the internet and quality magazines and art journals. Learners will develop their ability to select and analyse contextual images and objects for different purposes to inform their own work.

When studying others' art, craft and design, learners will need to examine how artists use visual language, materials and media to communicate ideas. This unit builds on learners' knowledge, skills and understanding of mark-making and making skills developed in *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication*. They will apply their understanding of the formal elements in analysing the work of others in order to recognise and record how artists, craftspeople and designers use visual language to communicate their ideas.

Learners will need to record their research through visual and written means. They will need to make appropriate selection from their research and exploratory studies. Careful consideration should be given to the display of learners' visual records and notes.

Through the study of different aspects of art, craft and design, this unit offers the opportunity to heighten learners' awareness of ethical, moral, social, cultural and environmental issues.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Know the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments
- 2 Be able to use historical and contemporary references to support research and development of own response
- 3 Be able to present information about the work studied in an appropriate format.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Know the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments

*Influences:* key movements; artists eg styles, schools and individuals; cultures (western, non-western, similarities, differences); historical; contemporary; selected works; wider context; creative production eg economic, social; materials; techniques; processes; formal elements eg communicating ideas, feelings; on own work; on the work of others

*Historical art and design developments:* eg exhibitions, museums, histories, journals, diaries, sketchbooks, documents, books, recordings

*Contemporary art and design developments:* eg current and recent exhibitions, shows, living artists, designers, craftworkers, events, galleries, visual environment, openings, reports, announcements, commissions, accounts, contracts, news stories, publications, Really Simple Syndication (RSS) feeds, blogs, journals, websites, online tutorials

## 2 Be able to use historical and contemporary references to support research and development of own response

*References:* primary sources eg original art works, paintings, prints, screen-based work, photographs, artefacts, gallery, workshop, visits, museums, visiting artists/professionals; secondary sources eg reproductions, copies, books, magazines, journals, internet

*Recording:* eg annotating, sketches, studies, own photographs; collecting ready-made visual images eg postcards, leaflets; interviewing people eg voice recording, video recording

*Own response:* use others' work to inform and develop own ideas; comment eg to artists' work, to influences, to ideas, approaches, techniques

## 3 Be able to present information about the work studied in an appropriate format

*Present information:* personal judgements; commentary; supporting evidence

*About the work:* eg background, biography, relevant details; creative production; materials; processes; formal elements; visual language eg communication, ideas, information, feelings, creative intention

*Appropriate format:* eg case study, annotated images in a file or sketchbook, oral presentation with visuals, video, website, blog, vlog, podcast

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> list influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments [IE; EP]	<b>M1</b> explain the influences of relevant historical and contemporary art and design developments	<b>D1</b> analyse the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments
<b>P2</b> use contextual research to support the development of own response [IE; CT; SM]	<b>M2</b> make connections between sources of contextual research to support the development of own response	<b>D2</b> creatively connect contextual research to support the development of own response
<b>P3</b> present relevant information about the work studied. [CT; RL; EP; TW]	<b>M3</b> present coherently, information about the work studied.	<b>D3</b> present imaginatively, individual insights about the work studied.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

### Delivery

The aim of this unit is to develop learners' understanding of the diversity of historical and contemporary practice in art, craft and design in the context of their ongoing practical work. Tutors will need to plan this unit so that learners understand the connections between the selected artists' images and their own practice. They will also need to ensure that learners experience a breadth of study into historical and contemporary movements and artists.

In order to maintain learners' interest, tutors are encouraged to use different approaches in delivering this unit. Lectures, discussions and seminar presentations alongside visits to galleries, exhibitions, sculpture parks, craft fairs, studios or workshops would all be suitable. Visiting expert speakers could add to the vocational relevance of the subject for the learner. Whichever delivery methods are used, tutors should endeavour to stimulate, motivate, educate and inspire.

In the introductory stages of this unit, learners might begin by researching the same artist, craftsperson or designer and discuss their findings with the group. There are many opportunities for group or team activities in delivering this unit, for example:

- themed research, where each group member explores a different aspect of a common topic, for example different individuals in a movement or period, approaches to the same subject matter or ways of working across different cultures. Learners can then share and discuss results
- planning and managing a visit from a local professional practitioner and identifying questions to ask them.

The learning for this unit should be integrated with the work for *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and/or *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication*. It will integrate well with other compulsory and specialist units. Delivery of this unit at different times and stages of the course must be carefully planned and will have greater relevance if closely linked to practical themes and assignments, where reference to other artists and designers is made.

Tutors should be aware of the need to track the relevant criteria of the units being covered. This is particularly important where witness statements are used to evidence the quality of learners' discussions or presentations of their findings.

Learners may need to be taught how to collect and record information. Many learners are skilled in using digital processes for the purpose of research and tutors need to exploit their learners' prior knowledge by creating opportunities for varied and interesting research methods. These will include using traditional recording from books and journals, interviewing professional practitioners live or by email or interacting through blogs, as well as using the internet to access a broad range of information. Ideally, learners should have access to a well-stocked learning centre with books and computers, DVD and CD ROM contextual material, from which to plan and build their investigations. Visiting contemporary exhibitions, artists' workshops and design studios will give learners insight into the approaches and use of media of practitioners in the vocational world. Learners should have access to the use of digital recording equipment to encourage them to record their investigations, discussions and developments for this unit.

Tutors will need to demonstrate meaningful ways of using contextual research. Downloading and copy/pasting must be demonstrated as useful only when supported by the learners' own comments, notes or annotations. Learners must be given opportunities and the confidence to contribute their own personal judgements when commenting on others' work. Tutors will need to demonstrate the value of independent thoughts and contributions, supported by sections of relevant and meaningful contextual material. It is expected that informal discussions and more formal presentations by learners be an essential teaching and learning tool for the delivery of this unit. Using digital video recording during discussions and presentations will help learners to develop their ability to use critical, analytical vocabulary.

Learners' contextual investigations will connect closely to their own developing practical art and design ideas. Influences from their contextual research will cover different aspects of their own work. These might include connections to the subject matter, or the use of formal elements or the media and techniques employed by the artist. Learners will be expected to describe and comment on how their own work has been influenced by the work they have studied. Constructive and consistent feedback sessions with both tutors and peers will be very helpful in teaching learners these skills.

Learners need to be taught how to present their research findings about artists, craftspeople and designers. The form of the presentation may vary and learners should be encouraged to provide clear, well-organised information and to think about interesting and creative ways of presenting their exploratory work. The work can be displayed in a sketchbook, on display sheets or boards, or by illustrated, oral and digital presentation.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to the unit - whole class: exploring the aims and requirements of the unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Body Adornment</b>
A series of structured lessons investigating the assignment:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>historical and contemporary body adornment, carnival costumes, tattoos, jewellery, tribal ceremonial costume</li> <li>learners given handouts and also take notes</li> <li>this activity followed by discussion and seminars</li> <li>learner-initiated study.</li> </ul>
<b>Assignment 2: Text and Image Analysis</b>
Learners select a number of images for analysis.
Identifying different artists' and designers' use of materials, techniques, processes and formal elements.
Making notes on results of enquiry.
Independent working to analyse text and image and organise work.
Individual and group tutorials .
<b>Assignment 3: Independent Contextual Study</b>
Tutorial to agree focus, eg 'Textured Surfaces in Design Objects'.
Learner-initiated:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>evaluating artists' and designers approaches to their work</li> <li>discussing how these might inspire and influence their own practical ideas</li> <li>interim assessment and review of progress.</li> </ul>

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
<b>Assignment 4: Influence on Own Work</b>
Reviewing research findings and use others' work to generate and develop own ideas.
Developing own practical work, experimenting with media and techniques, producing samples and maquettes.
Critical analysis - visual/verbal/written:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>analysing their own designs alongside their chosen contextual influenced through use of storyboards, worksheets, annotated sketches and notes</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>explaining what contextual elements are useful to the development of own ideas and how they are incorporating them in their practical work</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>developing and refining practical work towards completion</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing and commenting on what works well what doesn't and why</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>how own work is being influenced; what improvements/modifications needed</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>completing practical outcome.</li> </ul>
<b>Assignment 5: Learner-initiated Presentation</b>
Exploring a range of presentation methods.
Tutorial guidance.
Planning and designing a presentation gathered from research and enquiry.
Presenting to the group in an appropriate format using verbal/written/visual means.

## Assessment

To achieve a pass grade, learners will be expected to be able to identify the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments. This may be achieved in a number of ways, for example by investigating key movements, schools, individuals and cultural differences through study of original artwork or by using suitable high quality visual materials. Influences may be identified in terms of style, subject matter, use of materials, processes, ideas, beliefs and formal elements. Learners at this level are expected to cover a breadth of contextual imagery but not expected to study an extensive range.

Learners will be guided in their exploration of others' work to use as inspiration in developing their own work. They will generate ideas and develop a direct personal response. Learners should keep an illustrated record of their research notes to support this work. They will need to be taught how to efficiently and constructively collect and record this information and tutors can employ a number of methods to demonstrate this, using a variety of media.

Assessment is usually based on written information. However if learners struggle to communicate effectively in writing, then their ability to talk about what they can see and understand about the work should be taken into account. This could be achieved through presentations to the group, using witness statements or observation record sheets, as well as within annotated sketches or worksheets as part of their practical project.

Learners need to be able to present their research findings clearly. Their visual information should be organised so that the assessor can understand what the learner is trying to achieve. Tutors will be expected to provide support and feedback in order to help learners to generate this evidence appropriately.

To achieve a merit grade, learners should be able to explain the influences of a variety of art and design developments from the past and present. Learners should be able to provide evidence of a deeper understanding of these influences. The annotated pictorial evidence gathered could form the basis of part of a written project or oral presentation. Explanation may include social and political reasons for the success and popularity of art and design movements, artefacts or persons.

Learners should be consistent in presenting well-organised and coherent, effective information about the work studied. Their presentations will be interesting and informative and include their own ideas about the work studied and how it was made. Learners will show skill in their use of visual and critical analysis of others' work. Assessment evidence for these criteria might take the form of a combination of written notes, annotated sketchbooks or contextual workbooks and worksheets and planned preparations for audiovisual presentations. This evidence should be, in part, a reflection of their own development of practical work in the context of other art, craft and design.

To further achieve a distinction grade, learners are required to analyse and connect information on the different influences of art and design developments from the past and present.

Learners will demonstrate a creative approach to set tasks and begin to take an independent approach to research and development of their ideas. They will be evidencing thoughtful personal judgements on relevant historical, cultural and contemporary references and in their own work, they will show informed understanding of visual language. Learners will be expected to effectively plan and present personal, imaginative and well-structured information about the work studied.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3	<b>Assignment 1: Body Adornment</b>	Craftworkers producing material for a carnival.	Assessment methods might include:
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3	<b>Assignment 2: Text and Image Analysis</b>	Writer researching different artists.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using witness statements to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>observe and record learner activity and their progress while working</li> <li>record learners' discussions with groups and ability to communicate at tutorials</li> <li>observe and record learner presentations</li> </ul> </li> <li>Reports of progress from work experience placements</li> <li>Learner's own ongoing review of progress and self-evaluation evidenced through statements, notes and annotated sketchbooks/worksheets</li> <li>Evidence of visual studies from portfolio of ongoing and final work.</li> </ol>
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 3: Independent Contextual Study</b>	Designer analysing work of others.	
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3	<b>Assignment 4: Influence on Own Work</b>	Artist reflecting on own work.	
D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 5: Learner-initiated Presentation</b>	Artist/designer presenting to gallery/client.	

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Drawing	2D Visual Communication	Visual Recording in Art and Design
Explore Painting	3D Visual Communication	Materials, Techniques and Processes in Art and Design
Explore 3D Design	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	Contextual Influences in Art and Design

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES14 Explore the history and social impact of creativity and how it can influence your own design work
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context.

## Essential resources

Learners will need to reflect on others' work and should be encouraged to link it to their own practical work in other units. This will help them to gain an understanding of the context they work in and to gain inspiration for further assignments. Evidence for assessment should aim to link practical visual work with written and verbal materials.

Learners should have access to learning centre resources, which should include broad coverage of historical, cultural and contemporary art, craft and design. Resources should include written and visual traditional and digital materials. The collection should be sufficient to enable learners to achieve the unit. Learners should also have access to relevant museums and galleries to study appropriate work first hand. Audiovisual and computer-aided equipment and software should be used where appropriate to support teaching and learning, for example CD ROM, DVD and the internet.

Since this unit is integrated with learners' ongoing practical work, coverage will include practical art and design resources such as access to studios, workshops and associated materials and equipment.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with local business, industry and practising artists, craftspeople and designers to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Assignments should be vocationally relevant and centres should work with outside agencies to offer 'live' assignments to learners or to provide work experience.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme and for work experience and employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Learners should be regularly informed and updated on progression routes to further education and of job opportunities on completion of their course.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

- Duro P and Greenhalgh M - *Essential Art History* (Bloomsbury, 1994) ISBN 9780747514022
- Fiell C and P - *Design of the 20th Century* (Taschen, 2005) ISBN 978-3822840788
- Frayling C - *Art and Design* (Anova Books Collins and Brown, 1999) ISBN 9781855857254
- Hauffe T - *Design: A Concise History* (Laurence King Publishing, 1998) ISBN 1856691160
- Heartney E - *Art and Today* (Phaidon Press, 2008) ISBN 9780714845142
- Heller N G - *Appreciating Art* (A&C Black Publishers Ltd Herbert Press) ISBN 9780713687309
- Jervis S - *Penguin Dictionary of Design and Designers* (Penguin Books, 1989) ISBN NA7205 P48
- LaGamma A - *The Essential Art of African Textiles: Design Without End* (Metropolitan Museum of Art New York, 2009) ISBN 9780300149623
- Lynton N - *The Story of Modern Art* (Prentice Hall, 1991) ISBN TX 006142331
- Munder H (editor) - *Art and Language* (JRP Editions, 2006) ISBN 9783905701562
- Paul C - *Digital Art* (Thames & Hudson Ltd, 2008) ISBN 9780500203989
- Pooke G and Newall D - *Art History* (Taylor and Francis Ltd Routledge, 2007) ISBN 9780415373081
- Read H and Stangos N - *Dictionary of Art and Artists* (Thames & Hudson Ltd, 1994) ISBN 9780500202746
- Rowland A - *Bauhaus Source Book* (Phaidon, 1990) ISBN Z370126379793
- Rush M - *Video Art* (Phaidon Press Ltd, 2007) ISBN 9780500284872
- Sarane A - *Surrealist Art* (Thames & Hudson Ltd, 1985) ISBN 9780500200971
- Scharf A - *Art and Photography* (Penguin Books, 1990) ISBN 014013132
- Sparke P - *Design in Context* (Bloomsbury, 1991) ISBN 0748408592
- The 20th Century Art Book* (Phaidon, 1999) ISBN 0714847984
- The Art Book* (Phaidon, 1998) ISBN 0714836257
- Tufnell B - *Land Art* (Tate Publishing (UK), 2007) ISBN 9781854376046

### Journals

*Arts Monthly*

*Crafts*

*magazine*

*Creative*

*Design*

*Dazed and*

*Confused Design*

## Websites

<a href="http://www.artscouncil.org.uk">www.artscouncil.org.uk</a>	The national development agency for the arts in the UK
<a href="http://www.artjournal.co.uk">www.artjournal.co.uk</a>	An online guide to art books and exhibitions
<a href="http://www.axisweb.org">www.axisweb.org</a>	An online resource for contemporary art and artists
<a href="http://www.craftscouncil.org.uk">www.craftscouncil.org.uk</a>	The national development agency for contemporary crafts in the UK
<a href="http://creativecommons.org">creativecommons.org</a>	Creative Commons, dedicated to online sharing and collaboration of resources
<a href="http://www.design-council.org.uk">www.design-council.org.uk</a>	The national strategic body for design
<a href="http://www.designmuseum.org">www.designmuseum.org</a>	The Design Museum
<a href="http://www.fashion-era.com/C20th_costume_history">www.fashion-era.com/C20th_costume_history</a>	Fashion website with illustrations of fashion, costume, clothing and social history
<a href="http://www.graphicdesignblog.co.uk">www.graphicdesignblog.co.uk</a>	Blog run by freelance graphic designer
<a href="http://www.masters-of-photography.com">www.masters-of-photography.com</a>	Articles, images and resources on photographers
<a href="http://www.movieola.ca/index.php">www.movieola.ca/index.php</a>	A website dedicated to short films
<a href="http://www.nsead.org/home/index.aspx">www.nsead.org/home/index.aspx</a>	The National Society for Education in Art and Design
<a href="http://www.tate.org.uk">www.tate.org.uk</a>	The Tate Gallery
<a href="http://www.vam.ac.uk">www.vam.ac.uk</a>	The Victoria and Albert Museum

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	identifying the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments exploring historical and contemporary references in researching and developing own response
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	exploring historical and contemporary references in researching and developing own response presenting information about the work studied
<b>Reflective learners</b>	presenting information about the work studied
<b>Team workers</b>	presenting information about the work studied
<b>Self-managers</b>	exploring historical and contemporary references in researching and developing own response
<b>Effective participators</b>	identifying the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments presenting information about the work studied.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	researching contextual information from different sources originating and developing ideas for practical work investigating presentation techniques
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	selecting and recording from contextual and other sources generating and developing design ideas connecting own ideas to contextual influences imaginatively using media and experimenting with techniques presenting work in interesting, imaginative and aesthetically pleasing ways
<b>Reflective learners</b>	planning and evaluating own work discussing and reviewing own progress and getting feedback presenting work
<b>Team workers</b>	discussing work at seminars and contributing to feedback at presentations working with group to plan, mount and exhibit work
<b>Self-managers</b>	working independently to research contextual references and develop their ideas planning the development of their work assessing their own work

Skill	When learners are ...
Effective participators	participating in group discussions contributing to seminars planning and giving group presentations.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching contextual references for analysis of others' images and for use to inform own work scanning images to develop design ideas
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	planning project briefs and where and how ICT might be used when appropriate evaluating outcomes
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	researching from internet sources; downloading information; creating folders for storage and retrieval
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	undergoing induction period - introduction to the ICT centre and systems and working practices
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	researching internet sources for a range of contextual material and from different sites, selecting from their research, developing own response informed by research
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	researching information for different briefs and activities evaluating results
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	designing digitally; using scanners; inputting and formatting information from sources; use of software programmes for image development
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	collating research from different contextual sources together with own written work
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	creating a digital contextual studies folder; exploring appropriate presentation techniques
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	assessing their progress and commenting on the appropriateness of their selection of ICT tools and facilities - eg use of software programmes
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	using internet to email or access artists' blogs; email to submit written work; downloading information from internet sources; storage of information - creating folders for access

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	discussing the project brief; contributing to group discussions and the sharing of ideas; comparing visual qualities in selected contextual references in others' work; evaluating own studies; presenting to different audiences
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	researching, reading, selecting text and images; annotating, commenting and comparing; using text and image to relate to own work and evidencing understanding through discussion, evaluations and presentations
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	evaluating results of own ideas and analysing qualities in the use of formal elements and media, materials and techniques analysing and evaluating selected artists' images for the purpose of developing own work, using personal judgements; evaluating final ideas.

# Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication

Unit code: L/502/4823

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 5

Guided learning hours: 30

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to enable learners to gain an understanding and develop skills in two dimensional (2D) visual communication techniques, such as drawing, painting, photography and print-making.

Learners will follow set assignment briefs that allow them to apply skills through research, development and final design ideas.

## ● Unit introduction

It is essential that artists, designers and craftspeople develop the necessary 2D visual communication skills in order to meet brief requirements; enabling them to express ideas effectively.

This unit explores a wide range of 2D mark-making techniques with reference to formal elements such as line, tone, colour, shape, pattern, texture, form and proportion. Learners should be given the opportunity to experience as many 2D techniques as possible.

Learners will develop skills in this area with a view to completing research, development and final design ideas. This is an essential part of learning; skills and knowledge acquired for this unit will underpin all other units within the qualification.

Assignment briefs with a specific theme should give learners the opportunity to develop skills for this unit.

It is recommended that learners are introduced to 2D techniques offered by the centre through an induction programme followed by more specific assignments, for example a series of banners promoting galleries at the Victoria and Albert Museum. This assignment may include 2D research in the form of sketches and photographs from the museum which can be creatively developed into banners using 2D techniques such as printmaking.

Learners will be introduced to, and need to be made aware of, the health and safety issues associated with the techniques and processes for the unit.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use 2D mark-making techniques
- 2 Be able to communicate design ideas using 2D visual communication techniques
- 3 Be able to use formal elements in 2D visual communication.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to use 2D mark-making techniques

*2D mark making:* disciplines eg drawing, painting, photography, printmaking, digital (drawing, painting, manipulating)

*Techniques:* general eg touch, control, style, method, procedure, facility; specific eg drawing (stipple, smudge, sgraffito), painting (blend, wash, scumble), digital (clone, transform), printmaking (etch, silkscreen), photography (dodge, focus)

*Recording:* from primary sources; natural environment eg plants, humans, animals, insects, shells, landscapes; made environment eg architecture, artefacts, street furniture, galleries, exhibitions, museums; secondary sources eg magazines, journals, video, film, internet, printed material, CD ROM

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act of 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment; following COSHH guidance on materials and workshop practice

## 2 Be able to communicate design ideas using 2D visual communication techniques

*Communicate:* eg response, selected themes, assignment briefs, audience, consumer, client, end user

*Design ideas:* eg sketches, thumbnails, plans, patterns, series, visualisation, texts, layouts, patterns, diagrams

*Final design ideas:* eg finished paintings, drawings, prints, screen-based images

## 3 Be able to use formal elements in 2D visual communication

*Formalelements:* line eg contour, cross-hatch; tone eg shadow, contrast; colour eg hue, tint, value, additive, subtractive; form eg linear, shaded; shape eg regular, irregular; texture; scale; angle; proportion

*Materials:* eg drawing (tools, graphite, charcoal, crayon, ink, pastel, papers, surfaces), painting (gouache, inks, oil, acrylic, watercolour, brushes, pigments, medium, supports), printmaking (lino, foam, card, mesh, engraving, inks, press), digital (screens, projector, tablet, tablet, stylus, scanner, sensor, camera, touch-sensitive, printers), photography (camera, lens, printer, papers, screen, sensor, photo sensitive emulsion)

*Disciplines:* eg drawing, painting, printmaking, photography; digital media

*2D visual communication:* appearance eg shape, colour, texture, surface, composition, marks, uniformity, contrast, edges; content eg subject, focus, layout

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> demonstrate use of 2D mark-making techniques safely when working from primary and secondary sources [IE; CT]	<b>M1</b> demonstrate consistent and effective use of 2D mark-making techniques when working from primary and secondary sources	<b>D1</b> demonstrate imaginative and independent use of 2D mark-making techniques, when working from primary and secondary sources
<b>P2</b> communicate design ideas using 2D visual communication techniques [CT; RL]	<b>M2</b> communicate ideas effectively and consistently using 2D mark-making techniques	<b>D2</b> communicate ideas imaginatively and independently using 2D mark-making techniques
<b>P3</b> use formal elements in 2D visual communication. [IE; CT; EP]	<b>M3</b> explain the use of formal elements in 2D visual communication.	<b>D3</b> evaluate the use of formal elements in 2D visual communication.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

For this unit learners should have access to appropriate 2D resources such as photography, printmaking, painting, drawing and digital.

The opportunity to collect information from primary sources through drawing, digital cameras, camera phones etc is also essential for the delivery of this unit. While work from primary sources may look rougher and more hesitant, learners should be encouraged to recognise it as highly valuable in encouraging their long-term visual skills development and more personal connection to assignments.

Through the delivery of this unit centres have the opportunity to introduce learners to a wide range of materials and techniques. Whilst most of the unit is studio based, opportunities need to be taken for visits to locations, exhibitions, galleries and museums.

Delivery should motivate and excite learners; planned in such a way that includes induction to materials and techniques followed by assignments that will allow for the application of skills. Integration with other units should be considered where possible.

During the induction period it is essential that:

- learners are made aware of the health and safety issues relating to media, materials, tools and equipment used. It is important that learners know how to reduce the risk to themselves and others by thinking and working safely with tools, materials and technology
- learners are introduced to materials and processes relevant to 2D processes, for example drawing, photography and printmaking.

Assignment briefs should be built around the learning outcomes to maximise the opportunities for achievement.

Learning outcomes 1, 2 and 3 are closely linked. For all three outcomes, the techniques and processes selected will depend on the equipment and materials available in each centre, but it is expected that learners will familiarise themselves with as broad a range as possible. Each medium and material has its own set of rules and methods for use. Learners will need to employ the correct techniques for using the media and materials they work with and understanding the potential of media and process. Artists and designers often experiment and try to find new ways of working. They sometimes break the rules in order to get unusual results and finishes.

Learning outcome 1 will be delivered primarily through studio work, learners should be given the opportunity to experience as many 2D techniques as possible. It is important that assignments stimulate learners and give them the opportunity to extend the skills they acquire and to recognise links between the various materials, techniques and disciplines.

It is important that primary and secondary sources are carefully considered and various methods for recording from primary and secondary sources are explored. This is an opportunity for learners to develop their understanding of historical and contemporary art, craft and design practices.

Learning outcome 2 will be delivered in studios. Learners will need to understand how to generate ideas using techniques developed for learning outcome 1 and communicate them using appropriate methods. Contextual information will be vital in building learners' understanding of methods employed by artists, craftspeople and designers. Ideas will need to be developed through sketching and experimentation with 2D techniques. Learners could revisit and rework earlier studies produced in the studio or on location. It may be found at this stage that further visits or focused observation studies or photographs will help to refine learners' 2D communication techniques.

Learning outcome 3: this is the opportunity for learners to demonstrate their understanding of the formal elements through practical outcomes. They will need to be encouraged to articulate the different ways in which line, for example, can be created through, on the one hand, charcoal and on the other, watery paint and long-haired brushes. Through activities such as this, learners can then go on to further distinguish and control the use of tone, paint density, mixtures of colour and different surfaces (smooth, textured, light, dark, coloured, dry, damp, wet) to further modify the quality of line. Learners could extend their study, exploring the use of line in photography, printmaking or digital media.

Learners should be encouraged to document, discuss and present their opinions on the use of formal elements by artists, designers and craftspeople in their work, as well as the use of such in their own development of 2D ideas.

When describing their work and the work of others, it is necessary that the correct technical terms are used.

Learners' design work and final design ideas need to be documented in detail in terms of: formal elements, design ideas, final ideas and evaluation.

For this unit to be delivered successfully it is recommended that visits to galleries, museums and exhibitions are embedded in the assignment brief.

Inviting design practitioners in specialist fields to discuss their working methods with learners will put this unit into a vocational context.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to the unit - whole class.
Lecture/class discussion: formal elements in art, design and crafts and use by practitioners - whole class.
<b>Assignment 1: Recording from Observation for Print and Screen, Using Photography and Drawing</b> Introduction, eg theme: trees. Workshops: using drawing materials and digital cameras for recording from the natural environment. Independent working - learners' recording of trees with drawings and photographs; develop drawings, paintings, photographs and digital images into a print design for the upholstery of a chair of their choice. Research, design ideas (referring to formal elements). Tutorials, guidance. Visual and verbal presentation for assessment.
<b>Assignment 2: Application of Printmaking and Graphic Techniques</b> Introduction to assignment, eg theme: typography. Induction to the print studio including health and safety - whole class.
Introduction to print and digital techniques and processes - whole class.
Application of print and digital techniques - short tasks - whole group.
Workshop: using primary and secondary sources for assignment. Independent working: research, design ideas (referring to formal elements); produce an A3 booklet demonstrating print techniques and a digital folder of graphic techniques. Tutorials, workshops, demonstrations, guidance. Visual and verbal presentation for assessment.
<b>Assignment 3: Application of Photography Techniques</b> Introduction to assignment, eg theme: people. Induction to the photography studio including health and safety - whole class.
Introduction to photography techniques: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• camera</li><li>• developing and/or digital processing and optimisation</li><li>• application of photography techniques - short tasks - whole group.</li></ul>
Demonstrations of techniques, workshops. Independent research, design ideas (referring to formal elements); producing a series of photographs of people. Tutorials, guidance. Visual and verbal presentation for assessment.

## Assessment

Evidence should include a range of studies and samples that have been chosen to show how skills have developed, together with an awareness of safe working practices. Learners will need evidence of working from both primary and secondary sources and should use both in the development of their work. Work from primary sources may be more limited in that conditions on location or from short poses give limited time for learners to create considered work but it is often more immediate and exciting than that produced from secondary sources. Learners are expected to show some skill in the use of various techniques, with some grasp of the distinctive visual vocabulary relevant to specific disciplines.

The correct terms for techniques and reference to formal elements should be evidenced in learners' work; this can be presented in a variety of ways, for example presentation to the group, annotations inside a sketchbook or evaluation report.

The assessor should be aware of using the correct method of assessment, for example portfolios, sketchbooks, samples and digital records of presentations given to the group.

For P1, learners should be able to demonstrate the use of 2D techniques and processes safely in the studio. Learners are expected to use a limited range of materials and technical skills. Work will be guided by tutors.

For P2, learners are required to communicate their ideas. Responses will be predictable yet will clearly show ideas development and process. Learners have to present their work from concept to outcome and show connections to the work of others. Responses will show some creativity and experimentation although opportunities to develop ideas will have been missed and technical and presentation skills will be limited.

For P3, the correct terms for techniques and reference to formal elements should be evidenced. This can be presented in a variety of ways, for example presentation to the group, annotations inside a sketchbook or an evaluation report. Comments and observations will be descriptive with some attempt to compare and contrast..

For M1, learners will demonstrate a stronger grasp of 2D mark-making techniques and application. The mark making will be better articulated and controlled. Tasks for the pass criteria should be the same as those used for the merit, however the learners' approach may be more experimental. Learners should be able to work to a timescale, with limited guidance to fulfil the set tasks.

For M2, a deeper understanding for the uses of 2D techniques and processes and formal elements will be evidenced in learners' work. This will be evident in the practical outcomes and in the way these outcomes are presented.

For M3, learners will need to show, through annotation and presentation of their work, how the use of formal elements can meet various requirements for 2D visual communication. for example through them beginning to develop capabilities in transferring skills across disciplines.

For D1 and D2, learners will demonstrate more in-depth skill in using 2D mark-making techniques and applications.

An imaginative approach will be evidenced through the independent development and communication of ideas. More confidence will be evident in working from primary sources. Effective use of 2D techniques will be evident, with a more individual approach to assignment briefs. Techniques will be applied more accurately and links across disciplines will be more fully explored. Presentation will be more effective and the work will be completed within the timescale.

For D3, learners' evaluations of techniques and formal elements will be of a high standard in terms of content and presentation. The focus (and presentation) of evaluations should, primarily, be visual, although annotation and/or spoken word will form part of the evidence. Evaluation of own and others' work will support progression and development, demonstrating learning and understanding.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 1:</b> Recording from Observation for Print, Using Photography and Drawing	A textile designer develops designs for fabric, to be used for chair upholstery.	<b>Research:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>photographs of trees</li> <li>drawings</li> <li>colour studies</li> <li>(reference to formal elements).</li> </ul> <b>Design development:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ideas for fabric</li> <li>experiments with printing techniques</li> <li>(reference to formal elements).</li> </ul> <b>Final printed fabric.</b> <b>Evaluation.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All the above presented to the group for assessment using appropriate presentation techniques.</li> </ul>
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 2:</b> Application of Printmaking and Graphic Techniques	Typographers produces a sample book for clients, showing possible treatments of type through print and screen-based processes.	A3 booklet with prints inside. Evaluation. Presentation to the group of completed work.
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 3:</b> Application of Photography Techniques	Photographer uses digital and/or film-based processes to create a photostory about people at a specific place.	Mounted up photographs - a minimum of six. Evaluation. Presentation to the group completed work.

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Drawing	3D Visual Communication	Materials, Techniques and Processes in Art and Design
Explore Painting	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	Communication Through Art and Design
Explore Printmaking	Working with Photography Briefs	
Mixed Media	Working with Textiles Briefs	
	Working with Visual Art Briefs	

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a Computer Aided Design System.

### Essential resources

Learners will need access to a range of media, materials, relevant tools and equipment. This includes materials such as a range of pencils of varying hardness, soft graphite sticks, erasers, putty rubbers, crayon, pastel, watercolours, acrylics, oils, papers, fabrics, printmaking equipment for relief printing, stencil printing, digital cameras, computers. Access to a collection of materials and artefacts for primary observation and suitable locations is also necessary.

A studio space for 2D experimentation and development of ideas is essential, with specialist facilities for workshops and materials.

A learning resource centre (for example a library) providing research materials such as books, publications and the internet should be available.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with practising artists, craftspeople and designers, to deliver assignments to learners or to provide work experience.

Links with employers are essential for the delivery of the programme, for work experience and for future employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant, centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects' for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Barber B - *The Complete Book Of Drawing: Essential Skills For Every Artist* (Arcturus Foolsham, 2004) ISBN 978-0572030445

De Sausmarez M - *Basic Design: The Dynamics of Visual Form* (Herbert Press Ltd, 2007) ISBN 978-0713683660

Edwards B - *The New Drawing on the Right Side of the Brain* (HarperCollins, 2001) ISBN 978-

0007116454 Merrifield M P - *Light And Shade: A Classic Approach To Three Dimensional Drawing* (Dover, 2005) ISBN 978-0486441436

Perrella L - *Artists' Journal and Sketchbooks: Exploring and Creating Personal Pages* (Rockport, 2007) ISBN 978-1592530199

Simpson I - *Drawing Seeing and Observation* (A&C Black, 2003) ISBN 978-0713668780

Wilcox M - *Blue and Yellow Don't Make Green* (School Of Colour, 2002) ISBN 978-0967962870

### Resource packs

Adams E and Weiner J - *Drawing Attractions: Drawing Attractions, Drawing Insights, Drawing On-Sites, Drawing Inspiration, Drawing in Action, Drawing Practicalities* (NSEAD, 2006)

### Websites

[www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)

Art and design software

[www.campaignfordrawing.org/home/index.aspx](http://www.campaignfordrawing.org/home/index.aspx)

The Campaign for Drawing website

[www.drawingroom.org.uk/intro.htm](http://www.drawingroom.org.uk/intro.htm)

The website of a gallery dedicated to contemporary drawing

[schools-wikipedia.org/wp/d/Drawing.htm](http://schools-wikipedia.org/wp/d/Drawing.htm)

Online encyclopedia definition of drawing

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	carrying out visual research from primary and secondary sources using 2D techniques
Creative thinkers	demonstrating an understanding of 2D techniques through the generation of ideas relevant to the assignment brief
Reflective learners	reviewing the development of design ideas, acting on outcomes as appropriate evaluating experiences and learning to inform future progress
Effective participators	identifying the influences of historical and contemporary art and design developments presenting the work to peers and tutors.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	evaluating work, demonstrating the use of formal elements with reference to techniques and processes; final outcomes
Creative thinkers	developing ideas with reference to 2D materials and techniques. presentation of ideas: research, development and final outcomes
Reflective learners	setting goals with success criteria for their development of work
Self-managers	organising time and resources, prioritising actions
Team workers	collaborating with others to produce final outcomes.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching secondary sources relevant to the assignment brief
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	finding illustrative materials to support the development of design ideas using 2D techniques and processes
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	researching 2D visual communication techniques of artists and designers
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	presentation of research, design ideas and final pieces
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	presenting work: research, development and final design ideas
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	analysing different types of primary and secondary research material
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	annotating to support research collected, design development and final ideas in response to formal elements materials and techniques giving an evaluation.

# Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication

Unit code: R/502/4824

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 5

Guided learning hours: 30

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to enable learners to learn about three dimensional (3D) visual communication techniques, through processes such as construction, modelling, carving and casting.

## ● Unit introduction

Skills in 3D visual communication are necessary for artists, designers and craftspeople because they allow them to communicate the development of ideas in 3D with reference to the use of materials, techniques and formal elements; and to produce final pieces, for example products, furniture and sculpture.

It is recommended that learners are introduced to 3D materials, for example wood, metal, ceramics, plaster, glass, plastics and card, and techniques and processes through an individual workshop induction. The induction could be followed by assignments that allow the application of skills, to design, construct and produce 3D pieces. These could include automata, mobiles, packaging, flexigons, paper manipulation, wire or card constructions, installations made from cardboard that use tessellation, and pop-up books.

Learners will need to be made aware of the health and safety issues associated with the techniques and processes in this unit, for example safe workshop practices. The appropriate Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) guidance should be followed at all times.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use 3D making techniques
- 2 Be able to communicate design ideas using 3D visual communication techniques
- 3 Be able to use formal elements in 3D visual communication.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to use 3D making techniques

*3D making techniques:* eg cutting, joining, shaping, forming, carving, weaving, 3D digital techniques, model-making, experiments, finished pieces, laminating, fusing, casting, slotting, piercing, sanding, polishing, finishing

*Recording:* from primary sources; natural environment eg plants, humans, animals, insects, shells, landscapes; made environment eg architecture, artefacts, street furniture, galleries, exhibitions, museums; secondary sources eg magazines, journals, video, film, internet, printed material, CD ROM

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a work-shop environment; following COSHH guidance on material and workshop practice

## 2 Be able to communicate design ideas using 3D visual communication techniques

*Communicate ideas:* response to themes; assignment briefs; materials sampling eg model-making, maquettes, handling artefacts; investigating eg making processes, material properties, test runs; presentation eg working drawings, design sheets, onscreen, scale models, sketchbooks, feedback

*Development:* forms eg cylinder, cube, rhombus

*Design ideas:* eg card models, maquettes, test pieces, experiments, materials

*Final design ideas:* eg finished sculptures, models, artefacts, digital files

## 3 Be able to use formal elements in 3D visual communication

*Formal elements:* line; tone; colour; form; shape; texture; proportion; volume

*Use formal elements:* eg line (wire sculpture) tone (dyed fabrics, ceramic firing), colour (glazes, stained glass), form (pinch pots), shape (card sculptures, plastics); texture (stone carving), proportion (scale models, human figure), volume (inflatables, containers)

*Materials:* 3D non-resistant materials eg wet plaster, card, paper, string, wire, fibres, string Mod roc, papier mache, clay, foam, textiles; 3D resistant materials eg hard woods, soft woods, plywood, MDF, metals, plastic, glass, dry plaster, composites, sheet materials

*Techniques:* eg construction processes, cutting, carving, forming, moulding, weaving, joining, assembly, CAD/CAM, finishing processes

*3D visual communication:* presence eg volume, spatial, sound absorption, tactile quality, weight, ergonomics, softness, structure, scale, presentation; content eg subject, parts

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> demonstrate use of 3D making techniques safely when working from primary and secondary sources [IE; CT]	<b>M1</b> demonstrate consistent and effective use of 3D making techniques when working from primary and secondary sources	<b>D1</b> demonstrate imaginative and independent use of 3D making techniques, when working from primary and secondary sources
<b>P2</b> communicate design ideas using 3D visual communication techniques [CT; RL]	<b>M2</b> communicate ideas effectively and consistently, using 3D making skills	<b>D2</b> communicate ideas imaginatively and independently using 3D making techniques
<b>P3</b> use formal elements in 3D visual communication. [IE; RL]	<b>M3</b> explain the use of formal elements in 3D visual communication.	<b>D3</b> evaluate the use of formal elements in 3D visual communication.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit gives learners the opportunity to work with a wide range of 3D materials for the purpose of experimenting, developing and producing 3D pieces.

This unit should be delivered in the most appropriate workshops: for example, wood, metal and ceramics, with an induction schedule that covers the use of equipment with reference to materials, techniques and health and safety.

This unit should be linked with the others in the qualification to provide underpinning problem-solving and construction skills that can be extended in a broad range of disciplines; whether delivery is on its own or combined, it is important that attention is given to the content of the learning outcomes.

Learning outcome 1 will be delivered through specialist workshops (wood, metal, and ceramics); learners should be given the opportunity to experience a broad selection of appropriate and accessible techniques through which they can develop transferable skills. Learners should be taught to take into account health and safety procedures with reference to 3D processes specific to relevant workshops, for example, wood, metal and ceramics.

Assignments should stimulate and interest learners, as well as giving them the opportunity to develop 3D skills with reference to materials and techniques.

Learning outcome 2 will be delivered in workshops, using the appropriate machinery, tools techniques and processes with reference to materials, for example wood. Learners will need to understand how to generate and develop ideas using 3D processes acquired for learning outcome 1, and communicate them appropriately, for example maquettes, sketch models, scale models and final pieces.

Learners are encouraged to explore and experiment with the potential of 3D materials and to consider their source or manufacture, appropriate to the tasks set for induction and assignment briefs.

Learning outcome 3 will be delivered by applying 3D skills to design ideas and finished pieces. During this process it is essential that learners demonstrate an understanding of formal elements with reference to work produced, for example size, shape, form, function, pattern, including drawing for design, mood boards, working drawings, measuring and the technical language appropriate to the processes and techniques.

Learners should be encouraged to document, discuss and present their opinions on the use of formal elements, materials, techniques and processes with reference to their own work (development and final pieces).

Reference to the following will need to be made:

- formal elements
- design ideas
- materials
- techniques
- final pieces
- evaluation.

For the successful delivery of this unit it is recommended that the integration of 2D drawing skills are included.

Inviting design practitioners in specialist fields to discuss their working methods with learners, will put this unit into a vocational context.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to the unit - whole class.
Lecture/class discussion: formal elements in art, design and crafts and use by practitioners - whole class.
<b>Assignment 1: Application of 3D Techniques</b>
Introduction to woodwork studio - health and safety - whole-class workshop.
Induction to machines/materials - whole class:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>wood, plastic, string.</li></ul>
Class divides into two groups.
Groups are given a set amount of materials each eg wire, wood, string, plastic.
Task:
To construct a structure using the materials given; learners must consider joinery, as no adhesives or fixings can be used.
Demonstrate 3D skills.
Gain inspiration from others' work.
Making skills.
Group presentation for assessment.
<b>Assignment 2: Metalworking Theme - Body Adornment</b>
Introduction to metalwork studio - health and safety.
Machines/materials - whole class.
Application of metalwork techniques - short tasks, whole group.
Research.
Design ideas.
Reference to formal elements.
Gain inspiration from others' work.
Using metals create a full-size piece of body adornment.
Visual and verbal presentation for assessment.
Independent working.
Tutorials.

## Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

### Assignment 3: Ceramics Theme - Towers

Introduction to ceramics studio - health and safety - whole group.

Research.

Design ideas.

Reference to formal elements.

Gain inspiration from others' work.

Slab vessels based on towers.

Independent working.

Visual and verbal presentation for assessment.

Tutorials.

## Assessment

For P1, learners will be able to demonstrate the use of 3D materials and techniques safely in the relevant workshops; along with the communication of ideas linked to their practical work.

Learners are expected to use some 3D making techniques when applying creative and development skills. They will be able to use the processes safely but may not always be fully effective across the techniques used.

For P2, learners should communicate ideas using making skills and evidence this through, for example: samples, experiments, maquettes and scale models. Ideas will be limited.

For P3, the correct terms for materials, techniques and reference to formal elements are evidenced in the learner's work; this can be presented in a variety of ways, for example annotations in sketchbooks, evaluation or presentation to the group.

The assessor should use the correct method of assessment of learners' work, which for the most part will be through practical outcomes, along with workshop logs, materials and tools lists and witness statements or digital records for group presentations.

For M1, learners will demonstrate a firm grasp of 3D making skills and application using appropriate materials and techniques.

For M2, learners will work with some guidance to show how 2D making skills can be used to develop design ideas and be presented using the most appropriate communication methods. The quality of the ideas may not match the quality of materials working.

Tasks set against the pass criteria for this unit can be the same as those for the merit criteria; however, the approach from learners will need to be more creative and experimental.

A deeper understanding of materials, techniques and processes and the use of formal elements will be evident in learners' work.

For D1 and D2, learners will demonstrate more independence and control in 3D making skills and application. Imaginative use of making skills will be evidenced through the creative use of materials, techniques and development of ideas and communication.

Learners will demonstrate, through the application of 3D skills, an individual approach to the assignments brief/s. Learners' descriptions of materials, techniques and formal elements will be of a high standard in terms of content and presentation.

For D3, learners' evaluations of techniques and formal elements will be of a high standard in terms of content and presentation. The focus (and presentation) of evaluations should, primarily, be visual, although annotation and/or spoken word will form part of the evidence. Evaluation of own and others' work will support progression and development, demonstrating learning and understanding, with accurate references to formal elements, development and communication of ideas.

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2 M1, M2 D1, D2	<b>Assignment 1:</b> Application of 3D Techniques	A sculptor explores and applies a new technique.	Presentation of completed work to the group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• design development</li> <li>• completed piece.</li> </ul>
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 2:</b> Body Adornment	A jeweller produces new work for a festival.	Presentation of completed work to the group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• research on the body</li> <li>• design development</li> <li>• completed piece - body adornment</li> <li>• reference to formal elements: design development, final piece.</li> </ul>
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 3:</b> Ceramic Towers	A fine artist produces work inspired by urban environments.	Presentation of completed work to the group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• research on towers</li> <li>• design development</li> <li>• completed piece - ceramic vessel</li> <li>• reference to formal elements: design development, final piece.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore 3D Design Crafts	2D Visual Communication	Materials, Techniques and Processes in Art and Design
Explore 3D Design	Working with Fashion Design Briefs	Ideas and Concepts in Art and Design
Explore 3D Design Fine Art	Working with 3D Design Briefs	
	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	
	Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a Computer Aided Design System.

### Essential resources

Learners will need to have access to a range of materials, techniques and processes relevant to 3D.

Workshops might include wood, ceramics and metal, depending on the specialist areas available

A studio space for experimentation and development of ideas is essential. Adequate space for the storage of work in progress and completed pieces should be made available.

Learners should have access to a learning resource centre (for example a library), providing research materials such as books, publications and the internet.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with local business, industry and practising artists, craftspeople and designers to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme: work experience, employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects', for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Byars M - *New Chairs – Innovations in Design, Technology And Materials* (Chronicle Books, 2006) ISBN 978-0811853644

Eldershaw J - *Junk Jewellery: 25 Extraordinary Designs To Create From Ordinary Objects* (Crown, 2008) ISBN 978-0307405173

Fiell C - *Design for The 21st Century* (Taschen GMBH, 2003) ISBN 978-3822827796

Hosaluk M - *Scratching The Surface: Art and Content In Contemporary Wood* (North Light Books, 2002) ISBN 978-1893164154

Hudson J - *1000 New Designs and Where To Find Them: A 21st Century Source book* (Laurence King Publishing, 2006) ISBN 978-1856694667

Lefteri C - *Materials for Inspirational Design* (RotoVision, 2006) ISBN 978-2940361502

McCreight T - *The Complete Metal Smith: Illustrated Handbook* (Davis Publications, 1991) ISBN 978-0871922403

Merrifield MP - *Light and Shade: A Classic Approach to Three Dimensional Drawing* (Dover, 2005) ISBN 978-0486441436

Triplett K - *Handbuilt Ceramics* (Lark Books, 2008) ISBN 978-1579901844

### Resource pack

Adams E - *Space and Place* (NSEAD, 2004)

## Websites

[www.designfactory.org.uk](http://www.designfactory.org.uk)

A crafts and design development agency based in the East Midlands

[www.designnation.co.uk](http://www.designnation.co.uk)

The website of the Design Trust

[www.ecodesign.co.uk](http://www.ecodesign.co.uk)

Architecture practice specialising in low energy design

[www.henry-moore-fdn.co.uk](http://www.henry-moore-fdn.co.uk)

The Henry Moore Foundation

[www.huddersfield3d.co.uk](http://www.huddersfield3d.co.uk)

A design exhibition centre for product and transport design students

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	evaluating work produced, demonstrating the use of formal elements with reference to 3D designs and final outcomes
Creative thinkers	demonstrating an understanding of 3D techniques and processes through the development of ideas relevant to the assignment brief
Reflective learners	reviewing the development of design ideas, acting on outcomes as appropriate.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	identifying questions to answer and problems to resolve with reference to the assignment brief
Creative thinkers	developing ideas with reference to 3D materials and techniques presenting ideas: research, development and final outcomes
Reflective learners	setting goals with success criteria for their development evaluating experiences and learning to inform progress
Team workers	collaborating with others to produce final outcomes. Collaborating with others to produce final outcomes
Self-managers	organising time and resources, prioritising actions.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching secondary sources relevant to the assignment brief
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	finding illustrative materials to support the development of design ideas using 3D techniques and processes
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	presenting research, design ideas and final pieces
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	scaling timing
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	measuring perspective
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	presenting work collected: research, development of ideas and final design ideas
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	analysing different types of primary and secondary research materials
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	annotating to support research collected, design development and final design ideas in response to formal elements, materials and techniques presenting an evaluation.

# Unit 4: Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design

**Unit code:** Y/502/4825

**Level 2:** BTEC First

**Credit value:** 10

**Guided learning hours:** 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to enable learners to apply ideas to develop skills and knowledge in an art and design project proposal that they have constructed themselves. Learners will do this by carrying out research, development and generation of final design ideas relative to an art and design pathway such as graphics, textiles or 3D.

## ● Unit introduction

For successful completion of this unit, learners are required to have an understanding of the differences that exist between assignments. Art and crafts briefs are generally open ended with an emphasis on materials and techniques and the way they are applied. Design briefs meet the specific needs of the client, in some detail. In all cases, they will need to develop a focused project within a given timescale.

Exploring, developing and producing art, craft and design ideas are processes important to artists, designers and craftspeople when working on specific briefs. This unit brings together all the skills and techniques acquired by learners on the programme.

The assignment has four areas that need to be evidenced and worked on for this unit:

- **Analysis of the project brief:** learners will need to demonstrate an understanding of the assignment brief; it is important that through this understanding, adequate research will be collected to support the development of ideas.
- **Research appropriate information:** an understanding on how to research information to support the development of ideas is essential here. Access to primary and secondary sources will form the basis of research; historical and contemporary contextual research will provide essential information to inform and inspire the development of ideas. Learners will need to demonstrate an understanding of the assignment brief; it is important that through this understanding, adequate research will be collected to support the development of ideas.
- **Generating and developing ideas:** materials, techniques and processes will vary according to the specialist area of study, for example graphics, 3D fashion, etc. Learners will need to produce 2D and/or 3D prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples and test pieces to support the development of ideas and ensure that ideas will work in practice.

- Final design idea: through research and development, learners are required to produce and communicate the main features of their project proposal, effectively with reference to their specialism. Learners will need to produce an evaluation of their final outcome and development in response to the brief using the correct technical terms. Learners' progress and ongoing review of work needs to be documented using the most appropriate methods, for example visual diary, annotations in sketchbooks or design sheets.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to research and record visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to the brief
- 2 Be able to develop ideas that meet the requirements of the brief, through the use of specialist materials, equipment and techniques
- 3 Be able to present and communicate developmental work and final outcomes
- 4 Know the strengths and weaknesses of developmental work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to research and record visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to the brief

*Primary sources (varying depending on the brief):* recording eg drawing, painting, photography, video, objects, places, people, galleries, exhibitions, museums

*Secondary sources (varying depending on the brief):* recording eg drawing, painting, photography, video, digital-technology, paper-based and online publications, commercial products, audio-visual sources

*Record:* eg photographs, mood boards, sketches, notes

*Respond:* clarify brief; identify requirements eg information, limitations, constraints, needs of clients, users, audience, technical possibilities, success criteria

*Brief:* eg centre-based, interpretation, specialist area

### 2 Be able to develop ideas that meet the requirements of the brief, through the use of specialist materials, equipment and techniques

*Requirements of the brief:* eg analyse, clarify, inspiration, ideas

*Developing ideas:* eg 'thinking on paper', modelling with materials; applying research; generating initial ideas; review; development; evaluation; refinement; appropriate ideas; prototypes; final design

*Specialist materials, equipment and techniques:* (varies depending on specialism) eg plans, working drawings, 2D, 3D, development, sketches, video

### 3 Be able to present and communicate developmental work and final outcomes

*Present work:* initial research; progression; design ideas; final design; selecting specialist techniques; presentation format eg exhibition display, portfolio

### 4 Know the strengths and weaknesses of developmental work

*Strengths and weaknesses:* sources eg reasons, inspiration; successes eg rejected ideas, problems, solutions; initial ideas eg familiarity, unfamiliarity, taking different directions, creative risks, knowledge of processes; final outcome

*Developmental work:* communication eg to individuals, to a group, face to face, remotely; communication methods eg display, digital presentation, journal, blog, sequence, layout; approaches eg timescales, alternative solutions, ideas

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> research and record visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to the brief [IE]	<b>M1</b> research and record a variety of visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to the brief	<b>D1</b> research and record diverse visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to the brief
<b>P2</b> develop ideas that meet the requirements of the brief, through the use of materials, techniques and processes [CT; RL]	<b>M2</b> develop alternative ideas that meet the requirements of the brief, using a range of materials, techniques and processes	<b>D2</b> develop selected alternative ideas, imaginatively meeting the requirements of the brief with the use of specialist materials, techniques and processes
<b>P3</b> present and communicate developmental work and final outcomes to meet the brief [RL]	<b>M3</b> present and communicate coherent developmental work and final outcomes effectively	<b>D3</b> present and communicate diverse developmental work and final outcomes imaginatively
<b>P4</b> identify the strengths and weaknesses of the work in terms of meeting the requirements of the brief using appropriate technical terms. [RL]	<b>M4</b> explain the strengths and weaknesses of the work in terms of meeting the brief requirements, using technical terms consistently and accurately.	<b>D4</b> analyse the strengths and weaknesses of the work in terms of meeting the requirements of the brief.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

Work for this unit should be based on a brief devised by the centre, with scope for interpretation by the individual learner.

The brief should encourage learners to develop their research skills, and to explore and realise ideas creatively, through design development, problem solving, analysis and regular reviews and tutorials.

Learners should be encouraged to analyse their progress in developing ideas by making notes on what works well or not and why.

Learners will need to learn how to analyse the brief and write it up in their own words as a 'project proposal' with guidance from their tutors.

Learners should be encouraged to visit galleries, exhibitions and art, craft, design studios to support research and development with reference to the unit. Research is an important part of this unit, as it will form the basis for design development.

Use of primary and secondary sources will play an essential part here in encouraging exploratory ideas and providing information and inspiration. Learners will be required to draw on skills, techniques and processes acquired from other units in the qualification to support the realisation of ideas for this unit.

2D and 3D development work must be presented in the most appropriate manner relative to the design specialism; this may be used for presentation and assessment.

Learning outcome 1: covers the research and recording of information. Learners should access a range of primary and secondary sources with access to high quality visual and audio materials such as books magazines, video, film, the internet etc; visits to locations, workshops, studios, galleries, exhibitions and museums. Research collected should be relevant to the project proposal devised by the learner.

Learning outcome 2: with the support of tutors, learners will develop their individual responses to the project proposals. Learners are encouraged to experiment with ideas, exploring different possibilities creatively and imaginatively before developing the final idea, using planning notes, roughs, sketchbooks and mind mapping.

Learning outcome 3: learners will need to demonstrate clear and effective communication of their design ideas and final outcome. It is essential that learners communicate the final idea in a professional manner, using the most appropriate 2D and 3D visual aids.

Learning outcome 4: covers evaluation and analysis of learners' work. Methods of delivery consist of discussion and presentation to the group and one-to-one guidance with tutors. Learners are required to demonstrate how they developed design ideas using the correct technical terms. Analysis of strengths and weaknesses is essential here; regular guidance and review will support this process.

This unit allows learners to demonstrate the skills and knowledge they have acquired on the course.

The unit should celebrate the learner's development on the programme. Delivery should be integrated with one or more specialist units and completed at the end of the qualification.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to the unit - whole class
<b>Assignment 1: 'Inside - Outside'</b> Information provided on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• project theme</li><li>• expected outcomes</li><li>• methods of research and development that need to be followed</li><li>• timescale for the assignment.</li></ul> Lecture/class discussion - whole class. Questions and answers.
Template provided to learners: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• project proposal</li><li>• work schedule.</li></ul> Learners complete project proposal and work schedule.
Learners present project proposals to the group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• class discussion</li><li>• question and answers.</li></ul>
Learners begin collecting research for their project proposal (independent working). To include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• primary and secondary sources</li><li>• trips: museums, galleries, exhibitions</li><li>• studio work</li><li>• one-to-one/group support from tutor.</li></ul> Learners work from a schedule they have planned and put together for the collection of research.
Presentation of research collected - whole group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• class discussion</li><li>• question and answers</li><li>• feedback: action plan given to learners for further development; feedback: action plan given to learners for further development</li></ul>
Learners begin development of design ideas: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• experiments with materials and techniques relevant to the learners specialism</li><li>• one-to-one/group support from tutor.</li></ul> Learners work from a schedule they have planned and put together for the development of design ideas.

### Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

Presentation of design ideas - whole group:

- design sheets
- samples
- maquettes
- sketch models
- feedback: action plan provided to learners for further development.

Development of final piece of work with reference to project proposal:

- studio/workshop
- one-to-one/group support from tutor where appropriate.

Lectures/class discussion questions and answers - whole class:

- presentation techniques
- presentation methods: verbal non-verbal communication
- evaluation: success of work/strengths and weaknesses etc.

Completion of all work for final presentation/assessment.

Guidance provided from tutor on what needs to be completed.

## Assessment

The project proposal that learners complete for this unit will inform the final assessment along with practical work including planning, research, development of ideas and the final design idea.

Assessment should include a period of 10 hours' practical work under controlled conditions; this will allow for adequate access to specialist workshops, staffing and materials.

For P1, learners are required to carry out research from primary and secondary sources relevant to the brief proposal; reference must be made to what has been collected, more than one method may be used to collect research.

For P2 and P3, learners will demonstrate the development of design ideas using appropriate 2D and 3D materials and techniques; along with final design ideas.

Assessment may consist of a presentation to the class, a critic or peer assessment, along with supporting materials, for example design sheets.

Assessors need to be aware of the need to use the most appropriate assessment techniques, for example in the case of group presentations, witness statements would be needed.

For P4, learners will be expected to identify the strengths and weaknesses of their work with reference to the brief (project proposal). Use of appropriate technical terms must be evidenced in learners' work.

For M1, learners must demonstrate that they can research and record from a variety of appropriate primary and secondary sources in response to the brief. There should be some diversity in the sources. Often, more creative ideas result from sources that are not immediately connected. The sources may be presented by the tutor as starting points but the learner should be moving towards more independent working in the later stages of the unit.

Information collected should be well organised and refer to brief requirements.

M2 and M3 learners will develop alternative ideas and produce an effective outcome that meets the brief requirements. Some of the ideas chosen may be developed to a greater extent than others. Some ideas may relate more to the theme, while others may focus on creative use of the materials and processes.

Annotated design sheets, sketch models and samples will demonstrate how learners' chosen ideas might be realised to the final form; they will have met the requirements of the brief effectively in their careful and accurate selection of materials and techniques.

M4 learners are expected to analyse the strengths and weaknesses of their work effectively in relation to the brief requirements, using technical terms accurately and consistently.

In the first instance the evidence may be verbal (P4); but for merit criteria to be achieved, written or recorded work needs to be evidenced. More visual evaluations, with annotations in sketchbooks would be appropriate, writing frames for more sustained written pieces or onscreen presentations of visual records with voiceover may be used.

For D1, learners must independently research and record a diverse selection of information from primary and secondary sources in response to the brief. Learners should be increasingly involved in finding and investigating sources that cover many aspects of the theme.

For D2 and D3, the work will be similar to the merit criteria; however learners will demonstrate an imaginative and independent approach. Learners will show more control in selection of alternative design development ideas. Appropriate specialist methods and processes will be evident in the final piece, with skills and techniques used consistently and with some precision.

D4 requires learners to analyse how successful their work has been in meeting the brief requirements. They will demonstrate a good grasp of the process and be able to present their analysis with some imagination.

Assessment evidence can be the same for pass, merit and distinction criteria, however the quality of work, range of techniques and processes and level of independent working will determine the criteria achieved.

Assessors should ensure that learners present their work in the most suitable fashion relevant to the specialism, for example design sheets, presentation sheets, prototypes and group presentations; this should be carried in an organised and professional manner.

It is recommended that assessment methods are evidenced in the initial design brief.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3, P4 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 1: 'Inside - Outside'</b>	An artist/designer from a specialist field produces work for a thematic exhibition. Depending on the specialism, the work could take many forms, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• furniture</li><li>• sculpture</li><li>• painting</li><li>• a series of prints</li><li>• textile piece</li><li>• a poster advertising the exhibition.</li></ul>	Presentation of the following to the group for assessment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• research</li><li>• design development (experiments with materials, techniques relevant to project proposal)</li><li>• final design (including presentation sheets)</li><li>• evaluation (development and analysis of design ideas and final piece; strengths and weaknesses of design ideas and final piece.</li></ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Drawing	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	Ideas and Concepts in Art and Design
Explore Painting	Working with Photography Briefs	Communication Through Art and Design
Explore Printmaking	Working to Fashion Design Briefs	Community Art
Explore Mixed Media	Working with Textiles Briefs	
Explore and Create Surface Relief	Working with 3D Design Briefs	
Explore 3D Design Crafts	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	
Explore 3D Design	Working with Visual Art Briefs	
Explore 3D Fine Art	Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	
A Personal Project		

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use critical thinking techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES14 Explore the history and social impact of creativity and how it can influence your own design work
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work
- DES38 Manage design realisation
- DES39 Manage a design project.

## Essential resources

For this unit, learners should have access to resources and materials that allow them to achieve the outcomes of project proposals they have constructed relevant to their art, design or craft specialism.

Resources and materials include: fashion, textiles, interactive media, 3D design, graphic design, fine art, photography, moving image and design crafts. The *Essential resources* sections in the specialist units will provide more specific guidance.

A well-stocked learning centre (for example a library) with a range of art and design reference books, videos, journals, CD ROMs and access to the internet is necessary to support delivery of this unit.

Learners should be given the opportunity to attend visits to support primary research.

Workshops and studios should include current specialist machinery with relevant technical support allowing learners the opportunity to demonstrate their practical skills relevant to the assignment brief.

Further information can be sourced from essential resource sections found within the specialist units.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with local business, industry and practising artists, craftspeople and designers to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience, employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects' for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Please refer to other units in the specification.

### Websites

Please refer to other units in the specification.

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	planning and carrying out research relevant to theme and art, design or craft proposal
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	generating ideas and exploring possibilities relevant to project proposal.
<b>Reflective learners</b>	setting goals with success criteria for their development and work.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	carrying out research to support the development of design ideas
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	trying out alternatives or new solutions and following ideas through asking questions to extend their thinking
<b>Reflective learners</b>	reviewing progress, acting on the outcomes inviting feedback and dealing positively with praise, setbacks and criticism evaluating experiences and learning to inform progress
<b>Self-managers</b>	organising time and resources, prioritising actions.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching the work of artists, craftspeople or designers using a variety of sources including internet, CD ROMs and DVDs
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	finding illustrative materials to support the development of art, craft and design ideas relevant to specialist subject areas and project proposals
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	presenting research and development work for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• digital work journal</li> <li>• CD ROM</li> <li>• onscreen presentation</li> </ul>

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	scaling timing
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	measuring using perspective
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	presenting a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• project proposal</li> <li>• research</li> <li>• development</li> <li>• final ideas</li> </ul>
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	analysing primary and secondary research material
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	writing up research work collected, for example as a result of gallery visits; or producing an evaluation of their final outcome in relation to their project proposal.



# Unit 5: Building an Art and Design Portfolio

Unit code: H/502/4875

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 5

Guided learning hours: 30

## ● Aim and purpose

The purpose of this unit is to build an art and design portfolio, to act as a vehicle for supporting an application to employment or further study.

## ● Unit introduction

To be successful in the art and design industry, practitioners need to be able to present themselves and their work in the most appropriate manner. In many cases this presentation will be in the form of a portfolio of carefully selected and edited art and design work. Formats can vary from paper-based examples of actual art and design work, printed outputs from computer-based work, showreels or DVD presentations of film, installation or animation, or animated sequences of 3D modelling. The portfolio can act as a tool for demonstrating an individual's strengths, or to highlight their ability to work in a diverse range of disciplines, or use different media with success. Portfolios can be presented on websites as a way of attracting a larger audience.

In this unit learners will be taught the skills required to undertake the building of their portfolio. In doing this they will learn how to evaluate their work as a whole, and consider the strengths and areas for development in their work. They will learn how to select examples for inclusion in their portfolio, and develop understanding about setting criteria to help them make these judgements. The ability to present their examples to their fullest potential will also be explored, through learners considering the fitness for purpose of different presentation techniques.

As communication is such an important aspect of working in the art and design industry, learners will develop their ability to be able to explain their working practices and the aims in their work. The development of communication skills is likely to form an integral part of their career; this unit will provide them with a useful introduction to understanding and applying these skills. The knowledge learners gain can be applied to their application to employment or further study.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Understand the purpose of an art and design portfolio
- 2 Be able to present an art and design portfolio.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Understand the purpose of an art and design portfolio

*Purpose:* eg support an application for employment; support an application for further study; to highlight strengths in own work; demonstrate ability in a wide range of areas or disciplines; demonstrate specific technical skills; to highlight specialist skills relevant to career opportunity; establish pedigree of completed work or projects; provide evidence of published or exhibited work; show examples of design work in specific design briefs

*Art and design portfolio:* eg paper-based artwork, paper-based design work, material samples, photographic records or examples, DVD, video or web-based portfolios, animated sequences; supporting statements and CV

### 2 Be able to present an art and design portfolio

*Evaluating:* eg identify goals, evaluating own practical artwork, considering strengths and development areas

*Selecting:* eg deciding criteria for inclusion in portfolio; using feedback from others to assist in the selection process; editing examples

*Presenting:* eg cleaning, mounting and preparing art and design work; using frames; developing DVD or video-based portfolios; online or web-based portfolios; retaking photographic examples as required; developing onscreen presentations; producing a written statement to support practical work; writing CV

*Explaining:* eg articulating reasons for selection and rejection of work; providing rationale for presentation methods used; using written statements to provide information on content and interests; using information to support examples of work; explaining production methods in work

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> describe how artists and designers use portfolios [IE]	<b>M1</b> explain how artists and designers use portfolios, reaching consistent conclusions	<b>D1</b> independently describe how artists and designers use portfolios, reaching informed and in-depth conclusions
<b>P2</b> present an art and design portfolio [IE; CT; RL; SM]	<b>M2</b> competently select and present examples of their work to produce an effective art and design portfolio	<b>D2</b> independently select and present examples of their work to produce an exciting art and design portfolio
<b>P3</b> justify reasons for selecting work for an art and design portfolio. [CT; RL; SM]	<b>M3</b> consistently and effectively explain their reasons for selecting work for an art and design portfolio.	<b>D3</b> independently and fluently explain their reasons for selecting work for an art and design portfolio.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit can be delivered in two stages, as shown by the assignments in the outline learning plan.

The first assignment details a basic research task through which learners learn about the roles portfolios play in the art and design industry, it addresses learning outcome 1. The differences between some of the roles are quite subtle, but would nonetheless be useful to highlight. For example, where portfolios are used to support job applications they tend to be short and specific to the area or field; where portfolios are used to promote the individual to an agency, they may incorporate a wider band of areas or demonstrate abilities in a broad range of disciplines to widen the scope of potential commissions. The importance for learners of seeing examples of portfolios cannot be over-stressed. Tutors should present examples of their own portfolios (always a moment of significant interest for the learner group) as well as sourcing visits or presentations from local practitioners if possible. Online portfolios can be viewed and discussed. Learners should record as many examples of portfolios and uses as possible, and record the comments or reasons behind the scope in the portfolios by questioning the artist, craftspeople or designers directly if possible. This will inform their work in learning outcome 2.

In learning outcome 2 learners will go through the process of presenting their portfolio. The basis for the portfolio can be tailored to individual learner's aspirations - either employment or further study. In doing this, tutors can provide a very real situation which should give learners a valid reason for focusing their attention. Portfolios can be supported by a written statement, produced by learners to explain their areas of interests, ambitions and career goals. The exact nature of delivering this outcome will vary depending on the resources in the centre, but learners should be provided with ample space to spread out examples of their work. In assignment 2 this is achieved by dividing the group into pairs and providing each pair with an area and timespan in which to spread the work out and make the selection. Learners should make the initial evaluation and selection themselves, with tutors supporting this process by viewing their proposed inclusions and rejections and helping them to confirm their choices.

Once this has been achieved, learners can remove the surplus work and undertake cleaning, framing, mounting, and any computer-based activities involved with the presentation of practical work. Learners should be supported by appropriate technical assistance when framing/mounting examples, due to the high costs of the materials involved. Learners may also need access to specialist resources and supervision with photographing 3D, small-scale or large-scale pieces of 2D work. Tutors will need to agree the final format for presentations with learners, who will then present the portfolio and an accompanying supporting statement. This could be supported by the production of a CV, the construction of which could be delivered through a Functional Skills session. Learners should present their portfolios to the group, so that each example can be used to highlight strong examples of selection and presentation. Learners should evaluate and explain their reasons for their selection and the process of developing their portfolio. The unit can be concluded with the process of the mock interview itself - either for employment or for further study. If practitioners have been involved in the delivery it would be a real bonus if they could give time to be involved in these interviews.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Discussion and Research: How Are Portfolios Used in the Art and Design Industry?</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tutor presentation, discussion and research activities (including practitioner presentations/visits) (learning outcome 1).</li><li>• Independent learner-based research and presentation.</li><li>• Group discussion.</li></ul>
<b>Assignment 2: Mock Interview: read through. Scenario to be used depends on learner aims - either an application and interview for employment or an interview for further education/higher level study.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Learners work in pairs to organise all aspects of work, evaluate and make initial selection.</li><li>• Tutor feedback to pairs, via series of appointments/tutorials.</li><li>• Learners select, prepare and mount work.</li><li>• Individual learner presentations to group, showing portfolio and discussing rationale for selecting and rejecting examples of work. Notes for presentation to include a personal statement, passed out to all learners in audience (learning outcome 2).</li><li>• Mock interview, with learner evaluation at close.</li></ul>
Group crit and assessment.

## Assessment

Assessment of this unit can be achieved through tutor observation of learner performance, supported by learners' notes and records, and the quality of the practical portfolio produced.

For P1, learners should be able to list the ways in which artists and designers use portfolios in the industry. The range of applications will be limited.

For P2, learners will show an ability to be able to select work and undertake all the processes involved in producing their portfolio. Their choices may tend towards obvious examples, where the potential for inclusion of other aspects such as mounted preparatory work will be ignored.

For P3, learners will be able to explain their reasoning in a limited way. Choices will be justified and articulated but without extending the analysis in any great depth.

For M1, learners will be able to describe the ways that artists and designers use their portfolios with more depth. Analysis of examples in related areas such as graphic communication will be extended to consider the volume, type and purpose of each included item.

For M2, learners will be able to select the work for their portfolio with confidence. They will be able to evaluate the strengths and weaknesses in their work competently, and make considered judgements on what to include. The overall effect will be an effective portfolio of art and design work.

For M3, learners will effectively explain their rationale for choosing and rejecting work. Aspects such as running order of works, mounting techniques and volumes included will be clearly and effectively explained.

For D1, learners will be able to work independently in conducting their research into different applications of art and design portfolios. The range of uses covered will be further extended than in work assessed at M1, and learners will be able to use their research to reach informed conclusions.

For D2, learners will be able to select work to produce and present a portfolio that is exciting and engages the audience. Work will be chosen independently and used creatively in the mounting and sequencing of the work. For D3, learners will be able to independently and fluently explain their rationale for selecting and rejecting examples. They will be able to relate their choices to the overall purpose of the portfolio and how they visualise it working to communicate the intentions to the audience.

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, M1, D1	<b>Assignment 1: How Are Portfolios Used in the Art and Design Industry?</b>	Learners are undertaking background research to assist in the understanding and development of specific portfolios.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examples of independent learner research</li> <li>• notes, annotations and visuals in learners' work journals or sketchbooks</li> <li>• learner discussion</li> <li>• presentation.</li> </ul>
P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3	<b>Assignment 2: Mock Interview</b>	Learner preparing for an interview for further study/employment.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• complete portfolio</li> <li>• notes, annotations and visuals in learners' work journals or sketchbooks</li> <li>• learner evaluation</li> <li>• presentation</li> <li>• written statement/CV.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
A Personal Project	Working in the Art and Design Industry	Professional Practice in Art and Design
		Personal and Professional Development in Art and Design
		Freelance Work in Art and Design

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES21 Articulate, present and debate ideas in a creative environment
- DES28 Developing your own design offer
- DES36 Develop and extend your design skills and practices.

### Essential resources

This unit can be delivered as a studio-based series of exercises, supported by presentations from tutors and visiting practitioners. Off-site visits to practitioners can provide opportunities for learners to explore the content in more detail.

Access to general studios and adequate space to display and consider work will be important. Learners may also find visits to practitioners' studios and/or presentations from practitioners particularly useful. Library and internet access will also be required. Learners will need DTP/word-processing facilities when working up CVs or statements.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Practitioners can become engaged with this unit through presenting examples of their portfolios. Learners may also be able to visit design companies and/or galleries where designers and curators can explain how their websites were conceived in terms of content of work and intended communication.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and future employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Mornement C - *Second Steps: A One-stop Resource for All Who Are Setting Up a Business in the Applied Arts*  
(BCF Books, 2006) ISBN 978-0955002625

Mosse K - *Writers' and Artists' Yearbook 2009* (A&C Black, 2008) ISBN 978-1408102640

### Journal

*The Artists Newsletter* ([www.a-n.co.uk](http://www.a-n.co.uk))

### Websites

[www.artsjobfinder.co.uk](http://www.artsjobfinder.co.uk)

Information on jobs in the Arts

[www.prospects.ac.uk](http://www.prospects.ac.uk)

Graduate careers website

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	investigating how artists and designers use portfolios using research evidence to support conclusions
Creative thinkers	generating ideas about their portfolio - sequencing of work, creative approach to combining work, presentation techniques
Reflective learners	reviewing own practical work using feedback and evaluation to deepen learning
Self-managers	working towards goals and showing commitment organising time and resources, prioritising actions.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	researching, raising questions, analysing and selecting information using research to support conclusions using discussion, independent study and small group work to share ideas
Creative thinkers	using different materials when mounting work using different formats when framing or mounting work
Reflective learners	evaluating their strengths and weaknesses monitoring own performance learning through feedback
Team workers	collaborating with other learners when working in pairs
Self-managers	managing time to achieve completed portfolio
Effective participators	taking ownership of own professional development setting realistic and appropriate goals when producing their portfolio.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	keeping records on a USB, CD, server
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	working safely and adhering to legislation regarding working position, copyright, internet use
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	finding relevant information and collating it presenting work in an online or digital format
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	preparing work for the portfolio
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	preparing the portfolio for a specific interview
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	presenting onscreen, documents for assessment in a folder or online
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	sending a CV or preparing an online portfolio
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	presenting at an interview or mock interview
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	writing a personal statement, CV writing.

# Unit 6: Working in the Art and Design Industry

Unit code: K/502/4876

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 5

Guided learning hours: 30

## ● Aim and purpose

This unit aims to provide learners with a broad understanding of the art and design industry and the employment opportunities available within it.

## ● Unit introduction

In order to be able to progress on their chosen career path, learners will need to have knowledge of employment opportunities within the art and design field. This will include an overarching understanding of the different specialist areas and how they relate to each other, as well as specific knowledge of the different job roles within learners' chosen pathways. This unit aims to give learners an awareness of the employment roles and possibilities within the art and design industry. It will include an evaluation of different types of organisations and the roles individuals play within them. Different aspects of the art and design industry, such as administration, research and practical production, will be considered.

Learners will explore a range of art and design organisations. They will consider how these organisations operate in terms of their purpose and how they relate to specific markets. Tutors will support learners in researching employment opportunities. Examples shown in the content section can be amplified by learners exploring local organisations and evaluating the results to show their understanding. Learners may be able to relate their investigations to their specific chosen pathways.

Learners will consider the roles of people working in these organisations. They will develop research based on the characteristics of the different job roles they investigate, and explain how these roles relate to each other. Learners will develop an understanding of how organisations use individuals, whether they are freelance or employed directly, and how goals are achieved by the organisations and individuals. This understanding may be useful for learners when identifying their chosen specialist area, or in confirming this choice. Learners can consider the types of skills needed in the art and design industry, and use the knowledge gained to develop their own set of skills accordingly.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Know about organisations in the art and design industry
- 2 Know about job roles in the art and design industry.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Know about organisations in the art and design industry

*Organisations:* eg design groups, fashion houses, animation companies, arts centres, illustration and fine art agencies, multimedia companies, museums, newspapers and magazines, publishing houses, art direction companies, design firms, software publishers, public relations and marketing companies, television and film studios, newspapers and magazines, advertising agencies and in-house advertising departments, computer and digital imaging departments, theatres, architecture firms, interior design and decorating firms, education outreach, community arts

*Arts administration:* eg national funding bodies; regional arts boards; local authorities; business-based sponsors

### 2 Know about job roles in the art and design industry

*Job roles:* eg self-employed artist, design director, junior designer, freelance designer, interior designer, consultant, concept artist, artworker, multimedia designer, website designer, illustrator, graphic designer, textile artist or designer, product designer, ceramicist, craftsperson, fashion designer, software designer, animator, games designer, computer and interactive/multimedia artist, special effects artist, modelmaker, photographer, art director, 3D designer, copywriter, typographer, environment artist

*Arts administration:* eg producer, curator, funding officer, marketing officer, link worker

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> identify how organisations operate in the art and design industry [IE]	<b>M1</b> explain how organisations operate in the art and design industry	<b>D1</b> independently and fluently analyse how diverse organisations operate in the art and design industry, reaching informed conclusions
<b>P2</b> list job roles within the art and design industry [IE]	<b>M2</b> explain the characteristics of job roles within the art and design industry.	<b>D2</b> independently and fluently explain the characteristics of diverse job roles within the art and design industry, reaching informed conclusions.
<b>P3</b> describe the characteristics of job roles within the art and design industry. [IE]		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

Delivery of this unit can be based around the three assignments shown in the outline learning plan. As an introduction to the unit, assignment 1: Researching Job Roles provides a platform from which tutors can introduce the focus of the unit and give specific information about the variety of job roles and occupations in the industry, addressing learning outcome 2. Delivery should be based around a series of set activities, involving tutor presentation, learner research and subsequent individual learner presentations. These activities should be used as a process of assessment; at this level learners should be supported to present work for assessment that does not rely solely on written reports or essays.

Learning outcome 2 can be extended to provide evidence for P3, M2 and D2 through assignment 2, this is a group-based, discussion-led assignment. Learners should use information from assignment 1 to look at job roles in more detail and to identify the characteristics of these roles. Tutors will need to ensure that any shortfalls or gaps in learners' research from assignment 1 are filled in before the start of assignment 2. It will not be possible for learners to investigate completely all the varied and wide range of job roles in the industry in the time allowed for this unit; however, by dividing the overall group into smaller sub groups, and by giving each sub-group a distinct and different grouping of job roles, for example group A to investigate graphic design, advertising, marketing and art direction, it may be possible for tutors to give learners the opportunity to share their research. Tutors may also have supporting materials - DVD and video - about industrial practice and individuals that can be used to support delivery. Websites can also provide a useful source of information. Through a series of presentations that feed back each sub-groups' research, learners will be exposed to information about a much wider range of job roles and characteristics. The presentations and discussions should be used for assessment purposes.

The unit can be concluded with learners developing their knowledge and understanding through research into organisations in the art and design sector. These may be related to their area of study or chosen specialist pathway or, if they are undecided in their choice, give them an opportunity to consider career pathways in different areas. Learning outcome 1 requires learners to explain how organisations actually work. Both learning outcome 1 and outcome 2 can be supported with practical examples. If available, a visit to a practitioners' studio would give learners an opportunity to consider how a freelance designer works; alternatively, an organised visit to a design studio and an interview with employees/directors may be useful in providing information about practice in the industry. Visiting speakers from industry can be used to deliver relevant and up-to-the-minute information about the life of the practitioner, and how they relate to the wider industrial context. Learners should present their conclusions in a short written summary, supported by notes and visuals. Tutors can then conclude the unit through a group feedback and question and answer session.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Researching Job Roles</b> Tutor presentation, discussion and research activities (learning outcome 2). Independent learner-based research and presentation. Assessment.
<b>Assignment 2: Discussion - How Do Individual Job Roles Actually Work?</b> Tutor to select and group roles identified in assignment 1 / augment as necessary (to ensure unit content covered). Large group-based discussion - compare and contrast examples, with visual materials / case studies or short video/DVD materials (if available, visits to practitioners' studios / visiting speaker presentation can be used here). Tutor divides group into smaller sub-groups, and provides each sub-group with a set of job roles to research in more detail, identifying characteristics. Small-group work / presentations to peers. Individually, learners record conclusions. Discussion and conclusions from activity (learning outcome 2).
<b>Assignment 3: Case Study - Organisations (learning outcome 2)</b> Tutor read through. Learners select a minimum of two organisations and research. Organisations may be linked to their specialist area of interest. Learners research specific areas, considering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• purpose of organisations</li><li>• areas of work</li><li>• individual roles within the organisations</li><li>• how the individual roles relate</li><li>• learner independent research</li><li>• learners to finalise conclusions and produce a short report, supported by appropriate notes and research file.</li></ul>
Group feedback on assignments and plenary.

## Assessment

Evidence for this unit will take the form of learners' research findings and may be presented as part of a portfolio of collated material, and could include their own notes and organisational diagrams. 'Sharing' of research should be encouraged through the use of presentations, which might include PowerPoint, posters and leaflets, web presentations etc. Some of the research submitted will be related to the group-based tasks. It is important that tutors ensure that learners maintain their individual work journals throughout the group-based activities to ensure they have sufficient individual examples of research and conclusions.

To achieve P1 the learner must be able to explain how organisations operate in the art and design industry. For example, the learner may describe the development and production of an advertising campaign, produced by an advertising company.

To achieve P2, learners will need to be able to list job roles within the art and design industry. The range of roles that they list will show some understanding of the industry, although some of the examples may tend to be obvious. There may not be much development or amplification of the subtleties in different job roles within certain areas; for example, they may list 'graphic designer' as a job role, and not exploit the opportunity to develop their list of roles in this area through analysing the field in more detail such as 'junior designer; art director; artworker' and so on.

For P3, learners will need to explore the characteristics of the identified job roles. Some information is available on industry websites but learners will be able to cite first-hand evidence through work placements or visits to practitioners, studios and workshops.

For M1, the learner must provide more detailed explanations of organisations. Their research and conclusions will show analysis of different types of operations, and they will be able to explain them in an effective manner.

For M2, learners will be able to develop their list to include a wider range of examples, and these will have been well considered and relate to their identified areas for research.

To achieve D1, learners will be able to explain, independently and fluently, how a diverse range of organisations operates in the art and design industry. The range of examples will show a greater engagement with the tasks than work produced in the lower grades. Learners will be able to use their research to reach informed conclusions. Learners will be able to explain the characteristics of job roles within the art and design industry. They will identify the main characteristics and purpose of the job roles. They may not extend this analysis to consider how roles might interrelate in any detail. The range of characteristics described will be limited.

For D2, learners will be able to extend their list independently; this will show an ability to develop research beyond the obvious, and demonstrate an awareness of the field in more detail. Learners will be able to identify and explain the characteristics of a wider and more diverse range of job roles. They will be able to explain the function of the roles and explain the specific characteristics relating to them. Learners will be able to articulate independently the characteristics of a wider range of more diverse roles within their chosen areas. They will be able to explain fluently how the roles work within the organisations, and how the roles may interrelate.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P2, M2, D2	<b>Assignment 1:</b> Researching Job Roles	Learners preparing an application for employment are investigating the range of opportunities available.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examples of independent learner research</li> <li>• notes, annotations and visuals in learners' work journals or sketchbooks</li> <li>• learner presentation.</li> </ul>
P3, M2, D2	<b>Assignment 2:</b> How Do Individual Job Roles Actually Work?	Learners are considering specific employment pathways and need to research who does what within a specific area of art, craft or design.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examples of small group-based learner research</li> <li>• notes, annotations and visuals in learners' work journals or sketchbooks</li> <li>• learners' small-group presentations</li> <li>• learners' individual contributions to discussions</li> <li>• learners' individual notes regarding findings.</li> </ul>
P1, M1, D1	<b>Assignment 3:</b> Case Studies - Organisations	A learner is preparing an application for employment within a specific organisation; they are researching the organisation to provide them with background information to support their application, and to understand the qualities they will need to display at interview.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examples of learner research</li> <li>• notes, annotations and visuals in learners' work journals or sketchbooks</li> <li>• learners' short report and supporting information.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Painting	Building an Art and Design Portfolio	Professional Practice in Art and Design
Explore Printmaking		Personal and Professional Development in Art and Design
Explore 3D Design		Freelance Work in Art and Design
A Personal Project		

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES14 Explore the history and social impact of creativity and how it can influence your own design work
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES21 Articulate, present and debate ideas in a creative environment.

### Essential resources

Learners will need access to research information when investigating areas of, and roles within, the art and design industry; this might typically include trade journals, books and websites.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Visits to art and design organisations and contact with professionals working within the industry would be a valuable resource. Whenever possible, assignments should be set within a vocational context giving a purpose to research activities.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

Skillset, the sector skills council for creative media ([www.skillset.org](http://www.skillset.org)), provide details on their pages ([www.skillset.org/careers](http://www.skillset.org/careers)) about careers advice and industry information, plus a regularly updated news and events page.

Skillfast-UK, the sector skills council for fashion and textiles, provide details on their careers web pages ([www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob](http://www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob)) about careers advice and industry information, plus regularly updated news and events pages.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Herbert C (editor) - *Writers' and Artists' Yearbook 2010* (A&C Black, 2009) ISBN 978-1408111277

Mornement C - *Second Steps: A One-stop Resource for all who are Setting Up a Business in the Applied Arts*, 4th revised edition (BCF Books; 2006) ISBN 978-0955002625

### Websites

<a href="http://www.connexions-direct.com">www.connexions-direct.com</a>	Information and advice for young people
<a href="http://www.creative-choices.co.uk">www.creative-choices.co.uk</a>	Creative and Cultural Skills arts career pages
<a href="http://www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob">www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob</a>	Skillfast-UK textiles and fashion career pages
<a href="http://www.skillset.org/careers">www.skillset.org/careers</a>	Skillset audio-visual careers pages

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	investigating art and design organisations and job opportunities.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Creative thinkers	thinking of ways to present research findings considering various ways creatives work in the industry
Reflective learners	considering the skills they have developed that might be relevant to job roles they have investigated reviewing own targets for presenting information
Team workers	working in pairs or small groups to investigate and collate research findings develop materials for an assignment
Self-managers	ensuring they have met deadlines.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	creating a database of job roles
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	using the internet to investigate art and design organisations and job opportunities
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	collating and presenting research findings
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	presenting research findings
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	contributing to discussions regarding art and design and job roles
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	using books and journals in their investigations
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	collating and presenting research findings.



# Unit 7: Working with Graphic Design Briefs

**Unit code:** D/502/4826

**Level 2** BTEC First

**Credit value:** 10

**Guided learning hours:** 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to introduce learners to the techniques graphic designers use to create dynamic and innovative work and communicate messages or information in response to a brief.

## ● Unit introduction

Graphic design is a creative process that combines art and technology to communicate ideas. A graphic designer works with a variety of communication tools, such as images and text, in order to convey a message from a client to a particular audience. The purpose of graphic design is to promote or sell something or inform the viewer of a specific message; graphic designers employ a range of techniques to achieve this.

We are surrounded by examples of graphic design: in newspapers and magazines, on posters and flyers, on packaging and on billboards. Graphic designers work on their own or as part of a larger creative team. A number of large businesses employ graphic designers to work as part of their marketing departments.

Graphic designers explore ideas, materials and techniques in response to self-defined or given briefs. In order to develop their skills, they work with a wide range of different materials and techniques and experiment widely with both digital and traditional studio processes to explore the potential of a chosen medium. Research is undertaken using a wide range of primary and secondary sources and this is used to inform the development of ideas. Graphic designers continuously review the progress of their work. They analyse their experimentation and development in order to assess its suitability for the task. They evaluate the final product to ensure it meets their creative intentions and that it meets the requirements of the brief.

A successful response to a graphic design brief requires a working knowledge of how professional graphic designers work and the markets they target. Target markets and their specific needs vary enormously. Learners need to be taught how to analyse briefs and identify the needs of their target market, which will need to be taken into account when developing a response.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use appropriate graphics materials, equipment and techniques
- 2 Be able to meet the constraints of a pre-defined graphic design brief
- 3 Be able to develop ideas and produce a final product in response to a pre-defined graphic design brief
- 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of graphic design work.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to use appropriate graphics materials, equipment and techniques

*Studio materials and techniques:* eg design sheets, roughs, 'thumbnail' sketches, letterforms combined with images, collage, paste-up, marker pens; reprographic techniques eg photocopiers, copying, enlarging, reducing, manipulating; finished 'visuals'

*Health and safety:* workshop practice; studio environment; Health and Safety Act 1974; COSHH guidance on materials

*Digital techniques and processes:* eg inputting, scanning, photographing, filming, drawing, montage, web design, manipulating and editing images; prints; onscreen; screen formats; interactive media ideas; online outcomes

## 2 Be able to meet the constraints of a pre-defined graphic design brief

*Project brief:* analysis; requirements; additional information; development of work eg style, content, strategy, budget, legal considerations

*Research and record:* primary sources eg recording, observation, drawing/paintings, photography, video; sources eg objects, places, people, galleries, exhibitions, museums; secondary sources eg reproductions, photocopies, postcards, paper-based and online publications, libraries and audio-visual sources; market research eg gathered questionnaires, interviews, product testing

*Target audience:* primary group eg children, teenagers, females, males, single people, young professionals, elderly

*Applications of briefs:* eg packaging, signposting, advertising, promotion, typography, layout, titles, logos, corporate identity, channel ident

## 3 Be able to develop ideas and produce a final product in response to a pre-defined graphic design brief

*Ideas generation:* methods eg brainstorming, group discussion, experimentation, graphic materials, techniques, processes

*Developmental work:* preparation; planning; final product eg mood boards, visuals, sketches, layouts, mock ups, early drafts, colour, fonts, design boards, sketchbooks, maquettes

*Final product:* finished outcomes eg poster, flyer, packaging, advertising, design for print, t-shirt design, signage, stationary, point of sale display unit, corporate identity, logos, business cards, magazine, poster, leaflet, menu

#### 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of graphic design work

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg image purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, props, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*Graphic design work:* own work; others' work eg peers, professionals

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use materials, equipment and techniques safely	<b>M1</b> explore materials and techniques effectively	<b>D1</b> integrate materials and techniques creatively and independently
<b>P2</b> use graphic design processes	<b>M2</b> explore graphic design processes effectively	<b>D2</b> integrate graphic design techniques and processes creatively and independently
<b>P3</b> research and record primary and secondary sources in response to a pre-defined brief [IE; TW]	<b>M3</b> conduct competent research and record appropriate visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to a pre-defined brief	<b>D3</b> conduct independent research and record appropriate visual and other information from primary and secondary sources
<b>P4</b> produce developmental work and a final product in response to a brief [CT; SM]	<b>M4</b> produce effective and varied developmental work and a final product to meet a brief	<b>D4</b> produce imaginative and varied developmental work and final product to meet a brief
<b>P5</b> discuss successful graphic design work. [RL]	<b>M5</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D5</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit has been designed to give learners the opportunity to undertake projects in the specialist area of graphic design. Typically this would be through briefs that reflect current professional practice. The balance between traditional and digital work may vary depending on the availability of resources, but all learners need to develop some awareness of both approaches.

Tutors should consider integrating the delivery and assessment relating to this unit with any other relevant units the learner might be taking as part of their programme of study. In planning integrated unit delivery through project briefs, tutors should be aware of the need to track the relevant criteria of the units being covered. Depending on the specialist units chosen, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as photography or interactive media. The skills and understanding that learners develop in graphic design will contextualise and extend their understanding and use of visual language developed in *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication*.

Tutors should take the opportunity, when working on the practical aspect of delivery, to address health and safety issues. Learners will need to be advised of, and adhere to, all aspects of current legislation associated with health and safety practices in the studio or workplace. Learners will need to know how to use, handle and store sharp tools and dangerous materials. Appropriate COSHH guidance should be followed at all times.

Learning outcome 1 covers the materials, techniques and processes applicable to graphic design. This learning outcome is likely to be delivered through demonstration and practical exploration of traditional studio graphic materials and techniques. It will also be delivered through demonstration and practical exploration of digital techniques. Learners will need access to computers, and scanning and printing facilities. They will need to be able to work with a range of graphic design software.

Learning outcome 2 covers the analysis of the graphic design brief and the research element. Learners will need to use research skills to influence the development of ideas. This will involve learners exploring and experimenting with a range of primary and secondary sources. Delivery of learning outcomes 2 and 3 should encourage learners to record from primary sources as well as using a range of methods to record/collect information, such as use of the internet, photographs, postcards, leaflets/posters, notes and sketches. Learners will need to recognise the need for a wide range of research and recording as a rich resource for the development of their ideas. They will need to be guided on their selection of sources in relation to the brief. Tutors should encourage learners' participation in analysing the brief through asking probing questions and develop learners' creative abilities in generating exciting, innovative ideas.

Delivery techniques should be varied. Initially the brief is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through a presentation of slides/images. Tutors are also encouraged to engage with local and national employers who may be willing to assist in delivery by defining and setting live briefs or working with learners in a mentoring capacity. Ideally, learners will be able to visit a graphic design studio or a visiting graphic designer might give a talk about their own creative thinking and selection processes in response to a brief.

Practical work will form the major part of the delivery of learning outcome 3. Learners need to be able to choose suitable graphic materials, techniques and processes to produce developmental and experimental work and to realise their ideas in the form of a final product that meets the requirements of the pre-defined brief. Learners should be encouraged to combine traditional studio materials and techniques with digital techniques.

Learning outcome 4 requires learners to review the materials, techniques and processes they and others use, and to discuss and comment on the properties and characteristics, as well as the success and/or failure, of their explorations. This ongoing review will be essential in developing learners' analytical skills and in their understanding of how to use the critical vocabulary of graphics effectively.

A successful brief should give learners sufficient opportunities to provide evidence for all the learning outcomes.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
<p>Introduction to unit and structure of programme - whole class.</p> <p><b>Assignment 1: Understanding Graphic Design Briefs</b> - pair work on analysis of the requirements of a pre-defined brief.</p> <p>Analyse a given graphic design brief.</p> <p>Define target audience.</p> <p>Define limitations inherent in the brief.</p> <p>Create a mood board appropriate to target audience.</p> <p>Produce presentation.</p> <p>Present findings.</p>
<p>Introduction to studio techniques - whole class.</p> <p><b>Assignment 2: Promotion</b> - learners to produce graphic design outcomes designed to promote an event.</p> <p>Identify target audience.</p> <p>Undertake research appropriate to a given brief.</p> <p>Learners independently generate ideas using techniques previously taught.</p> <p>Produce final product.</p> <p>Pitch final product.</p>
<p>Introduction to digital techniques - whole class.</p> <p><b>Assignment 3: Selling</b> - learners to produce graphic design outcomes designed to sell a product.</p> <p>Identify target audience.</p> <p>Undertake research appropriate to a given brief.</p> <p>Learner independently ideas using techniques previously taught.</p> <p>Produce final product.</p> <p>Pitch final product.</p>

## Assessment

For P1, learners will be expected to use specific graphic design studio materials and techniques. At pass level, learners will show competence and safe working, with guidance from the tutor. P2 is closely linked, as learners' evidence should demonstrate a safe ability to use graphic design techniques and processes. It is envisaged that this may involve learners in a variety of tasks to develop their skills and understanding. If assessed directly by the tutor, suitable evidence from guided activities would take the form of observation records completed by the learner and the tutor. If assessed during a placement, witness statements should be provided by a suitable representative and verified by the tutor.

For P3, learners must provide evidence that they have researched and recorded from a basic range of primary and secondary resources in response to a brief. Learners should produce evidence which shows basic use of different methods to record/collect information, for example the internet, photographs, postcards, leaflets/posters, notes and sketches. This could be recorded in the form of files, sketchbooks, mood boards, PowerPoint presentations, etc.

For P4, learners will be expected to be able to develop basic ideas and outcomes to given a brief. Learners, at this level, should be able to select appropriate materials, techniques and processes for investigation and exploration, but will need some guidance. Learners will need to consider and document the development of their ideas, use of media and choice of final product.

For P5, learners should be taught the vocabulary associated with graphic design and use technical terms appropriately when discussing and evaluating their work. This could take the form of handwritten annotations alongside their work or recordings of their discussions. Recorded discussions could be in the form of critiques, one-to-one discussions or group presentations. Written evidence could be in the form of annotations or reports. Learners should be encouraged to discuss all their work, including experimental, developmental and final products. They will need to be taught how to record the process of analysing, modifying and refining ideas for all their working processes. When reviewing outcomes, learners need to analyse the successes and failures of their work.

For M1 and M2, learners should be able to competently handle more complex materials and techniques (both traditional studio and digital). The evidence should demonstrate that the learner is using the techniques employed effectively and safely. The tasks could be similar to those undertaken for P1 and P2, but tutors should also expect learners to carry out more in-depth and varied experimentation. Assessment evidence for this criterion could take a similar format to P1 and P2.

M3 requires the learner to conduct competent research from a range of primary and secondary resources effectively, in response to the brief. Learners should produce evidence that shows appropriate use of different methods to record/collect information. Assessment evidence for this criterion could take a similar format to P3.

For M4, learners should demonstrate an ability to produce varied developmental and experimental work, as well as a final outcome that effectively meet the requirements of a given brief. Learners must explore alternative ideas and select appropriate materials and techniques in the exploration and development of these ideas. Assessment evidence for this criterion could take a similar format to P4 but is likely to be much more varied.

Evidence for M5 might be integrated with the evidence for M1, M2, M3 and M4. Evidence of discussions for M4 might take the form of competent handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or recordings of their evaluations. It might also include learners' competently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with effective notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a range of materials and techniques. This evidence might also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1 and D2, learners are required to combine different studio materials and techniques. Learners are expected to provide evidence of an ability to select and combine appropriate techniques. The evidence should show that learners are able to work creatively, independently and safely.

For D3, learners must show evidence that they have researched and recorded from a wide range of primary and secondary resources independently, in response to the brief. Learners should produce evidence that shows confident use of different methods to record/collect information, for example the internet, photographs, postcards, leaflets/posters, notes and sketches. D3 is linked to D4 as learners must show that they have used the research undertaken for D3 to inform the work produced for D4.

For D4, learners are required to develop independently imaginative and varied ideas and final outcomes to meet a pre-defined graphic design brief by exploring and/or combining alternative materials, techniques and processes.

Evidence for D5 might be integrated with the evidence for D1, D2, D3 and D4. Evidence of discussions for D5 might take the form of confident handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or articulate recordings of their evaluations. It might also include learners' confidently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a wide range of materials and techniques. This evidence might also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, M1, D1 P3, M3, D3	<b>Assignment 1:</b> Understanding Graphic Design Briefs  (Pair work on analysis of the requirements of a pre-defined brief.)	Working as creatives within a graphic design company, learners attempt to pick apart a given brief in order to identify the key features; eg target audience and limitations or restrictions.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• idea-generating techniques</li> <li>• mood board</li> <li>• presentation (recorded)</li> <li>• notes from analysis of briefs.</li> </ul>
P1, M1, D1 P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3 P4, M4, D4	<b>Assignment 2:</b> Promotion  (Learners to produce graphic design outcomes designed to promote an event.)	Brief from a local entertainment venue wishing to promote an upcoming event.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• idea-generating techniques</li> <li>• appropriate research</li> <li>• evidence of experimental and developmental work</li> <li>• final product</li> <li>• presentation (recorded).</li> </ul>

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, M1, D1 P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3 P4, M4, D4 P5, M5, D5	<b>Assignment 3: Selling</b> (Learners to produce graphic design outcomes designed to sell a product.)	Brief from a local manufacturing company working on a marketing campaign for a new product line.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• idea-generating techniques</li> <li>• appropriate research</li> <li>• evidence of experimental and developmental work</li> <li>• comparisons with others' work</li> <li>• final product</li> <li>• presentation (recorded).</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Drawing	Working With 3D Design Briefs	Graphics Media, Techniques and Technology
Explore Painting	Working With Interactive Media Briefs	
Explore Printmaking	Working With Moving Image Briefs	
Explore Mixed Media		
Explore 3D Design		

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs

- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a computer aided design system
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a computer aided design system

Skillset, Design for the Moving Image

- DMI 1 Assist With The Technical Design Process
- DMI 4 Assess The Technical Implications Of The Design Brief
- DMI 3 Contribute To The Production Of Designs Using I.T.
- DMI 5 Allocate Drawing Requirements
- DMI 7 Create Models For Use In Productions
- DMI 30 Create Physical Artwork For Graphic Designs For The Moving Image
- DMI 31 Edit Graphic Sequences To Specification
- DMI 34 Produce Graphic Elements On Electronic Media
- DMI 36 Interpret Graphic Design Requirements.

## Essential resources

This unit has been designed to give learners the opportunity to undertake projects in the specialist area of graphic design. Typically this would be through briefs that reflect current professional practice.

The resources needed for this unit will vary according to the specific technical and material demands of the graphic design projects chosen, but are likely to include computers with appropriate software and hardware, studio tools and equipment and specialist journals and reference materials.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres could develop links with local graphic design studios, printers or local businesses that employ graphic designers. The scale of involvement by local employers may vary but all centres should endeavour to engage with professionals from the graphic design sector. This involvement might include visits, talks, setting live briefs, competitions or mentoring individual or groups of learners.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Bucher S - *All Access: The Making of Thirty Extraordinary Graphic Designers* (Rockport, 2004) ISBN 9781592530793

Hollis R - *Graphic Design – A Concise History* (Thames & Hudson, 2001) ISBN 9780500202708

Livingston A and L - *Dictionary of Graphic Design and Designers* (Thames & Hudson, 2003) ISBN 9780500203538

McQuiston L - *Graphic Design Source Book* (Chartwell, 1987) ISBN 9781555210779

Meggs P - *Meggs' History of Graphic Design* (John Wiley and Sons Inc, 2006) ISBN 9780471699026

Neuenschwander B - *Letterwork: Creative Letterforms in Graphic Design* (Phaidon, 1995) ISBN 978071482909

Wozencroft J - *The Graphic Language of Neville Brody 2* (Thames & Hudson, 1994) ISBN 9780500277706

### Journals

*Creative*

*Review Design*

*Week*

### Websites

[www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)

Graphic design software

[www.allgraphicdesign.com](http://www.allgraphicdesign.com)

Graphic design resources

[www.apple.com](http://www.apple.com)

Graphic design software and hardware

[www.dafont.com](http://www.dafont.com)

Online resource for fonts

[www.graphicdesign.about.com](http://www.graphicdesign.about.com)

Information and online links about graphic design

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	analysing and identifying the requirements of a given brief carrying out research appropriate to the given brief
Creative thinkers	generating ideas in response to a given brief exploring a range of ideas in response to a brief
Reflective learners	reviewing and reflecting on their own experimental, developmental and final product acting on the outcomes of research to modify and improve work
Team workers	collaborating with other group members when working in pairs or small groups
Self-managers	organising time and resources and prioritising actions when producing graphic design work.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	undertaking targeted research such as questionnaires
Creative thinkers	adapting ideas to compensate for changes in circumstances such as access to resources
Reflective learners	undertaking audience research to review effectiveness of work produce
Team workers	providing constructive support and feedback to peers in group critiques
Self-managers	managing own time and workload in order to meet deadlines
Effective participators	pitching final ideas and products.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	using digital techniques
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	annotating the success of digital techniques used
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	storing digital work
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	undertaking research graphic design work
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	exploring, extracting and assessing the relevance of information from graphic design websites
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	presenting the results of research undertaken building a website containing their graphic design outcomes bringing together a variety of materials gathered from research
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	using ICT to communicate with others in the group or outside agencies when appropriate

Skill	When learners are ...
Mathematics	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	using estimations and calculations to plan and execute layouts using estimations and calculations to interpret data collected from research such as questionnaires
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	
Use appropriate checking procedures and evaluate their effectiveness at each stage	
Interpret and communicate solutions to practical problems in familiar and unfamiliar routine contexts and situations	
Draw conclusions and provide mathematical justifications	
English	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	undertaking pair or small group work on analysis of brief taking part in whole group discussions pitching final ideas and products
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	undertaking research for graphic design work
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	annotating work produced writing copy for graphic design work producing reports from research gathered.

# Unit 8: Working with Photography Briefs

**Unit code:** H/502/4858

**Level 2:** BTEC First

**Credit value:** 10

**Guided learning hours:** 60

## ● Aim and purpose

This unit aims to develop learners' knowledge and ability to use photographic techniques and processes, guided by the constraints and opportunities of a specific brief.

## ● Unit introduction

Photographers explore ideas, materials and techniques in response to self-defined or given briefs. In order to develop their own professional skills, they work with different materials and experiment widely - increasingly through the use of digital media - to explore the potential of a chosen medium and its suitability for the task. They research widely from different sources to gain inspiration to help them develop ideas. Professionals continuously review the progress of their work to ensure it meets their creative intentions and the requirements of the brief.

Photography involves capturing images in a studio or on location and producing prints using film-based and/or digital technology. It is essentially about learning to capture exciting visual qualities through a viewfinder. Professional photographers have to be able to analyse briefs accurately and identify which factors need to be taken into account when developing their response. Learners will study the work of contemporary and historical photographers to explore, experiment with and understand how to use specialist photography materials and techniques relevant to their brief.

Learners will develop their skills and understanding by exploring film-based and/or digital techniques in response to their brief. The extent to which learners can be instructed in the full range of traditional techniques will depend on the centre's access to darkroom facilities. However, it is expected that basic techniques and use of equipment will be taught as a foundation on which to build understanding and skills in new technology and processes. Learners will need to be made aware of the health and safety issues associated with both the traditional (film-based) and digital media and techniques they use.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use photographic processes
- 2 Be able to develop ideas to meet photography briefs
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of photographic work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to use photographic processes

*Techniques and equipment:* preparing equipment eg care of equipment, loading and unloading a camera, camera settings, handling negatives, battery charge, available memory; taking pictures eg portraits, landscapes, townscapes, still life, photograms; controlling the image eg use of shutter and exposure, ISO settings, focus, depth of field; estimating distances; framing a subject; composing a picture; using natural and artificial light; selecting images eg scanning, editing, cropping; producing images for the brief eg 111 contact sheets, 'proof' prints, inkjet, dye sublimation, screen-based

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment; following COSHH guidance on materials and workshop practice

### 2 Be able to develop ideas to meet photography briefs

*Photography briefs:* advertising; fashion events; social events eg weddings, funerals, births; editorial themes eg homelessness, frozen landscapes, the unexpected; recording eg reportage, scientific, technical, forensic, political, historical, fine art, social; information eg local events, news

*Meeting the brief:* questions eg image purpose, factors (available light, time, access, props, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content); similar projects eg commercial, professional

*Selecting suitable materials and processes:* qualities eg technical, aesthetic, fitness for purpose; alternative options eg properties, characteristics, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg materials, techniques; constraints eg legal, ethical, resources, time

### 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of photographic work

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring eg properties, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg image purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, props, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*Photographic work:* own work; others' work eg peers, professionals

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use photographic techniques [CT; TW; SM]	<b>M1</b> explore photographic materials and processes effectively	<b>D1</b> integrate diverse photographic materials and processes imaginatively
<b>P2</b> use photographic equipment safely [SM]	<b>M2</b> develop effective, coherent ideas and outcomes to meet photography briefs	<b>D2</b> develop innovative, imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet photography briefs
<b>P3</b> select appropriate materials and processes to meet photography briefs [IE; CT]	<b>M3</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D3</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.
<b>P4</b> develop ideas and outcomes to meet photography briefs [IE, CT; SM; RL]		
<b>P5</b> discuss successful photographic work. [IE, RL; TW]		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit has been designed to give learners the opportunity to undertake projects in the specialist area of photography. Typically this would be through briefs that reflect current professional practice. The balance between traditional (film-based) and digital work may vary but all learners need to develop some awareness of both approaches. Tutors should use as wide a range of techniques to achieve this. Whichever methods are used, delivery should inspire enthusiasm, motivation and stimulation in the learner.

Depending on the choice of specialist units, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as graphic design, fine art, moving image or interactive media. For example a photography brief asking learners to research an area of their local environment for potential regeneration and development might involve them using their photographs for inspiring mural designs, or creating video clips and a series of photojournalist images to report on a problem. Some learners might use their photographs and video clips to produce a web design. The skills and understanding that learners develop in photography will provide an important resource for work produced for *Unit 4: Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design*.

The importance of health and safety issues relating to workshop practice must be stressed. Learners will need to be advised of, and adhere to, all aspects of current legislation associated with health and safety practices in the studio or workplace. The appropriate COSHH guidance should be covered.

Learning outcome 1 covers the exploration of traditional and digital techniques, equipment and technology. The areas studied will vary according to the centre's resources, particularly in terms of darkroom and digital facilities. These outcomes can be integrated during visits to professional photographic studios. They will be delivered in part by discussion and demonstration but mainly through learners' practical exploration of the resources.

It would probably work more efficiently at first to give all learners the same brief to work on. They could work in small groups and come back to present their analysis and subsequent ideas to the group as a whole. Learners need to be able to select suitable material, techniques and processes to realise their ideas and respond to briefs. Asking learners to review the materials, techniques and processes they use and to discuss and comment on their properties and characteristics, as well as their success and/or failure, will be important in developing their analytical/critical skills and understanding. The explorations and investigations undertaken for this unit build on learners' knowledge gained in *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication*. Learners will be informed and inspired in developing their own ideas through the study of relevant contemporary and historical photographers. The opportunity to visit a professional photographer will give learners vocational insight and promote a deeper understanding of a practitioner's working methods. Confidence in this research could come from work carried out in *Unit 4: Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design*, if part of the qualification.

Learning outcome 2 covers the exploration and development of ideas in response to given briefs. Delivery techniques should be varied. Initially, learning outcome 2 is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through an inspiring presentation of slides/images. Tutors should encourage learners to participate in analysing the brief through asking probing questions and developing learners' creative ability in generating exciting, innovative ideas. It could be helpful for a professional photographer to visit the centre to speak about their working methods and processes when responding to a brief. This would also add vocational relevance.

Learning outcome 3 requires learners to review the materials, techniques and processes they and others use and to discuss and comment on their properties and characteristics, as well as the success and/or failure, of their explorations. This ongoing review is essential in developing learners' analytical skills and in understanding how to use the critical vocabulary of graphics effectively.

A successful brief should give learners sufficient opportunity to provide evidence for all the learning outcomes.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Unit read through and outline scope of the unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Research into Photography Briefs</b>
Group read through.
Tutor presentation of examples of photographic work in advertising, graphic design, social, fine art, fashion, reportage, industrial, scientific etc.
Learners research into aspects of photography briefs.
Learners present examples eg photography in advertising, photography in fashion and compile research.
Learners discuss conclusions.
<b>Assignment 2: Personal Project</b> (themes can be set by tutor but can be broad enough to encourage learners to take ownership ie documentary)
Stage 1 - identify subject - learners (can relate subject to previous work in other units and/or ideas generated from research tasks in assignment 1).
Stage 2 - produce a plan for the production of the piece - work in liaison with tutor/s and technician/s to ensure health and safety and risk assessments are carried out.
Stage 3 - sign off plan, ensure all equipment is ready as required.
Stage 4 - shoot the piece/s.
Stage 5 - compile/capture/edit as required.
Stage 5 - prepare presentation of work.
Stage 6 - present piece; evaluate reactions and feedback.

## Assessment

For P1, learners will be expected to gain experience of photography techniques. They will need to support their work with simple explanatory annotation.

P2 requires learners to use equipment appropriately and safely. Assessment evidence for P1 and P2 might be generated through informal presentation, witness statements or observation records, or through annotated work sheets or logbooks. Evidence can also be gained through work placements. If assessed during a placement, witness statements should be provided by a suitable representative and verified by the tutor. Guidance on the use of observation records and witness statements is provided on the Pearson website.

P3 is linked to P4, in that the choices of materials and processes will depend to a large part on the brief and the ideas the learner develops.

For P4, learners are required to develop ideas in response to briefs. These can be gained through study of others' work and through their earlier explorations of photographic processes. Work for *Unit 1: Contextual References in Art and Design* could be usefully drawn upon here.

For P5, learners could write a report on their work or could produce a more visual presentation of the ways in which they have met the requirements of the brief and relate this to examples of others' work.

For M1, at merit level learners will be expected to explore photographic processes, with consistent control. M1 requires the effective selection of materials and processes. The tasks could be the same as those undertaken for P1, P2 and P3, but tutors should also expect learners to demonstrate a greater independence when planning their work and selecting their range of materials and equipment. Assessment evidence for this criterion could take a similar format to that for P1, P2 and P3.

For M2, learners should be able to develop effective ideas that are achievable with the facilities available. Learners will be expected to demonstrate an increasingly independent and experimental approach to their developmental work. Evidence for M2 might be integrated with the evidence for M1.

Evidence of discussions for M3 might take the form of competent handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or recordings of their evaluations. This might also include learners' competently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with effective notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a range of materials and techniques. This evidence could also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, the learner will need to use diverse processes, which may include both traditional and digital, in imaginative ways. Assessment evidence could again take a similar format to that for the pass and merit grade levels. Learners should keep records of the materials and processes they chose to meet the requirements of the brief, linking these to the ideas developed for D2.

For D2, learners are required to develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet photography briefs. At distinction level, learners will explore diverse ideas showing the ability to produce final outcomes independently and creatively. They should demonstrate confident visual communication skills, fully meeting the requirements of given briefs. Learners will be expected to explore combinations of a wide range of materials, techniques and processes creatively and safely. Evidence will also be available in the range of processes and materials presented in the portfolio.

For D3, evidence might take the form of confident handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or articulate voice/video recordings of their evaluations. This could also include learners' confidently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a wide range of materials and techniques, together with reflection on how other photographers have addressed similar briefs. This evidence might also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P5, M3, D3	<b>Assignment 1: Research into Photography Briefs</b>	A photographer researches into aspects of others' work, considering the ideas, techniques and equipment used, together with other constraints and opportunities evident through study of the work.	Presentation of findings to the group through verbal, written, print or screen-based means; contribution to group discussion.
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 2: Personal Project</b>	A fine art photographer carries out a personal project.	Presentation of work to the group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• planning</li><li>• development</li><li>• completed work on brief.</li></ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
A Personal Project	Contextual References in Art and Design	Visual Recording in Art and Design
	2D Visual Communication	Ideas and Concepts in Art and Design
	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	Communication through Art and Design
	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	Photography Media, Techniques and Technology
	Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs	

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work.

Skillset, Photo Imaging

- P1 Store and Retrieve Photographic Equipment and Material
- P2 Organise and Carry Out Photographic Assignments
- P3 Take Standardised Portrait Photographs
- P4 Take Standardised Still-Life Photographs
- P5 Take Specified Photographs
- P6 Conceive and Take Photographs
- P7 Specify and Obtain Processed Images
- C1 Contribute to Effective Performance At Work
- C3 Contribute to The Maintenance of Health, Safety And Security At Work
- C6 Contribute to The Development of The Photo Imaging Brief
- D1 Create Original Artwork for Digital Images
- D2 Carry Out Specified Image Scanning
- D3 Plan and Produce Scanned Images
- D4 Carry Out Specified Image Editing
- D5 Plan and Produce Edited Images
- D6 Prepare for, and Produce, Image Output
- D7 Contribute to the Effectiveness of Imaging Activities
- D8 Send and Receive Image Data Files by Digital Means
- D11 Edit Images Using a Digital Processing Station.

## Essential resources

For this unit learners should have access to appropriate resources such as cameras, digital equipment, darkrooms, books, internet; to use according to assignment briefs.

The opportunity to collect information from primary sources is also essential for the delivery of this unit.

The resources required will vary according to the specific technical and material demands of the photography projects chosen, but are likely to include:

- digital or 35 mm SLR cameras with a choice of lenses
- processing and enlarging equipment
- computers with appropriate software and hardware
- specialist journals and reference materials.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with local business, industry and practising artists, craftspeople and designers to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and future employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects' for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

Skillset, the sector skills council for creative media, provide details on their photo pages ([www.skillset.org/photo](http://www.skillset.org/photo)) about careers advice and industry information, plus a regularly updated news and events page.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Child J - *Studio Photography: Essential Skills* (Focal Press, 2008) ISBN 978-

0240520964 Davies A - *Digital Imaging for Photographers* (Focal Press, 2004) ISBN

978-0240515908 Galer M - *Location Photography: Essential Skills* (Focal Press, 2002)

ISBN 978-0240516691

Galer M - *Photography Foundations for Art and Design* (Focal Press, 2007) ISBN 978-0240520506

Langford M - *Langford's Basic Photography* (Focal Press, 2007) ISBN 978-0240520353

Langford M - *Langford's Starting Photography* (Focal Press, 2008) ISBN 978-

0240521107 Vandome N - *Digital Photography in Easy Steps* (Computer Step, 2005) ISBN

978-0760771426 Wills L - *Photography: A Critical Introduction* (Routledge, 2004) ISBN

978-0415307048

Zakia R D - *Basic Photographic Materials and Processes* (Focal Press, 2000) ISBN 978-0240804057

### Websites

[www.flickr.com](http://www.flickr.com)

Online photo sharing

[www.lomography.com](http://www.lomography.com)

Website dedicated to film-based photography

[www.myshutterspace.com](http://www.myshutterspace.com)

Social network for digital photographers

[www.photography.com](http://www.photography.com)

Resources for photographers

[photography.nationalgeographic.com](http://photography.nationalgeographic.com)

Online galleries for National Geographic magazine/  
photography

[photo.net](http://photo.net)

Resources for photographers

[www.photonet.org.uk](http://www.photonet.org.uk)

The Photographers' Gallery website

[www.pinhole.org](http://www.pinhole.org)

Website dedicated to pinhole photography

[www.popphoto.com](http://www.popphoto.com)

Features and reviews of photographers and resources

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	carrying out visual research from primary and secondary sources using photography
Creative thinkers	seeking opportunities to use materials, ideas and techniques in new ways
Reflective learners	identifying difficulties and considering ways in which they may be solved
Team workers	supporting and contributing to group discussions
Self-managers	taking responsibility for own progress
Effective participators	gaining insights into the ideas and working processes of other practitioners.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	establishing contact with practitioners
Creative thinkers	finding ways of applying their learning in other units or other subjects to the unit assignments
Reflective learners	realising increasing potential in their work
Team workers	collaborating with other learners to realise common goals
Self-managers	prioritising actions and resources
Effective participators	showing confidence in asserting views and ideas.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
ICT – Use ICT systems	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	capturing, processing and manipulating digital images for an assignment
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	discussing how their own work meets the demands of the brief
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	organising their digital images
Troubleshoot	solving problems with exposure in digital photographs
ICT – Find and select information	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	researching the work of artists, craftspeople or designers using a variety of sources including the internet, CD ROMs and DVDs
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	
ICT – Develop, present and communicate information	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• text and tables</li><li>• images</li><li>• numbers</li><li>• records</li></ul>	presenting research findings, perhaps in the form of a blog, website, on a CD ROM or in a digital presentation
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	presenting and exchanging information with other learners and photographers about their work
Mathematics	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	calculating exposure, ISO, aperture, shutter speed

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	presenting their own views on their own work and the work of artists, craftspeople and designers
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	discussing their own, their peers' and others' views on their own work and the work of artists, craftspeople and designers
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	writing up research work produced, for example, as a result of gallery visits or via an interview with an artist, craftsperson or designer.



## Unit 9:

# Working With Fashion Design Briefs

**Unit code:** K/502/4859

**Level 2:** BTEC First

**Credit value:** 10

**Guided learning hours:** 60

### ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to introduce learners to fashion design briefs which will enable them to undertake projects in the specialist area of fashion. Learners will experiment with a range of specialist materials, techniques and processes in order to develop ideas and outcomes which reflect current professional practice

### ● Unit introduction

Fashion designers explore ideas, materials and techniques in response to self-defined or given briefs. In order to develop their own professional skills, they work with different materials and experiment widely to explore the potential of a chosen medium and its suitability for the task. They research widely from different sources to gain inspiration to help them develop ideas. Professionals continuously review the progress of their work to ensure it meets their creative intentions and the requirements of the brief.

Fashion design involves the manipulation of materials, visual and structural elements and the resolution of functional and aesthetic criteria in line with market trends. Fashion designers have to be able to analyse briefs accurately, identifying which factors need to be taken into account when developing their response. The aim of this unit is to enable learners to understand how to respond successfully to fashion design briefs. Learners will develop the skills to do this by exploring and experimenting with appropriate specialist materials, techniques and processes.

Learners will develop their vocational skills and understanding by exploring pattern drafting and construction techniques and processes. They will explore traditional and non-traditional fabrics, which will include natural and synthetic fibres. Construction techniques will include the use of hand tools, machinery and associated technology. Learners will need to be made aware of the health and safety issues associated with the materials and techniques they study.

This specialist unit gives insight into the life of a professional fashion designer. The focus will be on what the practitioner does and how they do it, rather than the business details. A professional fashion designer would not necessarily make up garments if they were working in the design studios of a large fashion company. Fashion designers need to have the technical knowledge to allow them to design for different markets. In a large company, part of a designer's role is to work with the technical designer to ensure that their fashion designs are interpreted as they intended.

Learners will explore the type of studio/workshop environment and the specialist materials, techniques and equipment used by the professional. They will learn how the need to create commercially viable products affects fashion designers' creative thinking.

Learners who explore fashion design can progress to other roles in the industry such as pattern cutter, product developer, garment technologist, fabric technologist, quality manager, fashion costume designer, theatre wardrobe manager, fashion stylist, fashion journalist, retail manager and buyer.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use pattern drafting techniques and processes
- 2 Be able to use construction techniques and processes
- 3 Be able to develop ideas to meet fashion design briefs
- 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of fashion design work.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to use pattern drafting techniques and processes

*Pattern drafting and cutting techniques and processes:* given brief eg cutting patterns from basic blocks, planning layouts and marking out patterns, cutting and marking out construction details, the safe use of cutting and marking tools and equipment

## 2 Be able to use construction techniques and processes

*Construction techniques and processes:* given brief eg planning, construction process, seaming, edging; fittings; fastenings; embellishments eg Velcro, zips, buttons, belts, handles, beads and lace; finishing; pressing

*Health and safety:* elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment and following the appropriate COSHH guidance on materials; Health and Safety Act 1974

## 3 Be able to develop ideas to meet fashion design briefs

*Fashion design briefs:* clothing eg for men, women, children, specialist markets (couture, leisure, evening, current trends); footwear; accessories; analyse; identify requirements of brief eg response, target market, needs, preferences; technical; functional factors eg type, properties, characteristics (materials, costs, scale of production, time, performance fit)

*Materials, techniques and processes:* aesthetic qualities; fitness for purpose; alternative options; properties eg characteristics, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability

## 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of fashion design work

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*Production process:* technical competencies; creative abilities; time management; costings

*Sources of information:* self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, tutors, client; documentation eg notes, minutes of meetings, notes from feedback, production diaries, visits

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use pattern drafting techniques and processes safely [IE; CT; SM]	<b>M1</b> use a variety of pattern drafting techniques and processes effectively	<b>D1</b> use diverse pattern drafting techniques and processes creatively and independently
<b>P2</b> use construction techniques and processes safely [IE; CT; SM]	<b>M2</b> use construction techniques and appropriate materials, techniques and processes	<b>D2</b> use diverse construction techniques, materials, techniques and processes creatively and independently
<b>P3</b> develop ideas and outcomes to meet fashion design briefs [IE; CT; RL; SM]	<b>M3</b> develop coherent ideas and outcomes to meet fashion design briefs	<b>D3</b> develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet fashion design briefs
<b>P4</b> select appropriate materials, techniques and processes to meet fashion design briefs	<b>M4</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D4</b> evaluate and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.
<b>P5</b> discuss successful fashion design work.		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit has been designed to give learners the opportunity to undertake projects in the specialist area of fashion. Typically this would be through briefs that involve learners developing ideas and outcomes reflecting current professional practice. Depending on the choice of specialist units, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as textiles, photography or design crafts.

Learners need to be able to select suitable material, techniques and processes to realise their ideas and respond successfully to briefs. Learners should review their use of techniques and processes, discussing and commenting on the properties and characteristics of different materials and techniques. Learners should be encouraged to apply techniques and processes with accuracy. They should also learn to critically evaluate the quality of their own and others' work. Tutors delivering this unit should use as wide a range of techniques as possible in order to assist learners' developing skills and understanding. Lectures, discussions, seminar presentations, studio/workshop practical sessions, visits to fashion design studios and exhibitions and research using library and internet resources would all be suitable. Whichever methods are used, delivery should stimulate, motivate, enthuse and educate the learner.

Working in the studio can be dangerous. Learners will need to be aware of the health and safety issues relating to the media, materials and equipment they use. They should know how to reduce risks to themselves and others by thinking and working safely. A common sense approach should be emphasised, rather than merely referring to rules and regulations. Learners could keep a health and safety logbook, alternatively they could design storyboards, symbols or posters to record safe practice visually. Tutor observation of safe working practice through witness statements is also acceptable.

Tutors should consider integrating the delivery and assessment for this unit with other relevant units learners may be taking. In planning integrated unit delivery through project briefs, tutors should be aware of the need to track the relevant criteria of the units being covered.

Learning outcome 1 requires learners to use pattern drafting techniques and processes. This will depend on what materials and equipment are available in each centre, but it is expected that learners would make simple patterns and be taught to draft a pattern from a standard block or from a design using drape modelling on a stand. However this learning outcome will be delivered mainly through practical studio and workshop experiences.

Learning outcome 2 should be delivered primarily through practical studio and workshop experiences. Although selection and use of materials and techniques will depend on the individual centre's available resources, it is expected that learners will need to be taught garment construction techniques and processes. Technical skills should be accurate and learners must understand how to use tools and equipment safely. Learners should be encouraged to use techniques and processes appropriately but also creatively, mixing the materials, techniques and technology wherever possible. They will need to learn respect for the specialist tools and the function they perform and how to look after the tools and equipment correctly, working safely at all times. Investigating professional work will enable learners to gain insight into how professionals work in a fashion context and help them decide on their direction vocationally. They could do this by visiting practitioners' workshops or studios.

For learning outcome 3, delivery techniques should be varied. Initially this learning outcome is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through an inspiring presentation of slides or images. Tutors should encourage learners to participate in analysing the brief through asking probing questions, and develop learners' creative abilities in generating exciting, innovative ideas. For this learning outcome, learners will be drawing directly on, and developing, skills and understanding gained in *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication*. Learners will find it useful to look at others' work in this area, which will build on exploration undertaken in *Unit 1:*

*Contextual References in Art and Design*, as it will help them form their own opinions and appreciation and show individuality in their responses. Visits to galleries and exhibitions will form an integral part of the delivery of this outcome. Visiting fashion and textile practitioners will offer learners opportunities to develop their understanding of fashion in a vocational context.

The delivery for learning outcomes 2 and 3 can be integrated. They are both about learners developing work to meet a fashion brief and understanding how this happens. Delivery techniques should be varied and stimulating, encouraging learners to investigate the creative use of materials within a fashion context. Initially this learning outcome is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through an inspiring presentation of slides or images. Tutors should encourage learners to participate in analysing the brief through asking probing questions, and develop learners' creative ability in generating exciting, innovative ideas. Group activities would be beneficial at this level, with learners discussing ideas around a set brief, looking at possible options for individual investigation. Learners may have quite different areas of personal preference they would like to investigate. They could be encouraged to try different approaches and methods individually, then meet to share the results. Meeting with a professional would inform learners about vocational fashion practice. Learners could be asked to plan and manage this, and identify questions to ask the practitioner.

Learning outcome 4 will be delivered through reflection on and assessment of ongoing work, with comparisons made to fashion designers' work that has been developed for similar briefs. Visits to fashion designers or from visiting professionals will give good opportunities to examine details of timescales, budget, costings, aesthetic qualities and technical processes.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to the unit and structure of the programme - to include a tour of the fashion facilities and discussion about health and safety issues.
<b>Assignment 1:</b> Cubism - group discussion on the ways in which this brief could be interpreted. To include ideas for research and new techniques.
Cubism brief. Learners begin research on the theme of 'Cubism', eg Picasso, Braque, Art Deco.
Manufacturing skills introduced, for example <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• use of domestic and/or industrial sewing machines accessories</li> <li>• different seam finishes</li> <li>• facings and hems.</li> </ul>
Learners develop basic ideas to meet the brief by selecting appropriate materials, techniques and processes for initial research.
Learners record health and safety considerations as appropriate.
Learners produce final outcomes in response to the brief.
Learners evaluate their and others' work, presenting outcomes to the group.
<b>Assignment 2:</b> Wraps - group discussion on the ways in which this brief could be interpreted. To include ideas for research and new techniques.
Wraps brief. Learners begin research on the theme of 'Wraps', eg dress designers, packaging designers.
New skills introduced: pattern cutting and garment making: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pattern drafting from a basic block</li> <li>• pattern marking - grain lines, seams, darts</li> <li>• lay planning to avoid fabric waste.</li> </ul>
Learners develop basic ideas to meet the brief by selecting appropriate materials, techniques and processes for initial research.
Learners record health and safety considerations as appropriate.
Learners produce final outcomes in response to the brief.
Learners evaluate their and others' work, presenting outcomes to the group.

### Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

**Assignment 3: Transformation** - group discussion on the ways in which this brief could be interpreted. To include ideas for research and new techniques.

Transformation brief.

Learners begin research on the theme of 'transformation', eg fashion designers, fine artists, graphic designers.

New skills introduced eg working with natural and recycled fabrics.

Learners develop basic ideas to meet the brief by selecting appropriate materials, techniques and processes for initial research.

Learners record health and safety considerations as appropriate.

Learners produce final outcomes in response to the brief.

Learners evaluate their and others' work, presenting outcomes to the group.

Learners select and present work for final assessment of the unit.

## Assessment

To achieve a pass grade, learners must achieve the five pass criteria listed in the grading grid. P1 requires learners to use pattern drafting techniques and processes competently, therefore with accuracy and with an awareness of safe working practices. Evidence for these criteria could be achieved through correctly labelled and annotated patterns.

P2 requires learners to use construction techniques and processes competently, therefore with accuracy and with an awareness of safe working practices. Evidence for these criteria could be achieved through informal presentation of annotated samples and worksheets, a technical file, witness statements or observation record(s).

For P3, learners will be expected to develop basic ideas and outcomes, supported by answers to questions from the tutor about how the work meets the brief. Learners at pass level will select appropriate materials, techniques and processes and explore how different effects can be achieved using them. Evidence should include a range of simple studies and samples that have been chosen to show how ideas and skills have developed and progressed. This work may be presented to the class formally or be evidenced through interim assessment as the unit delivery progresses.

For P4, learners should be able to select appropriate materials, techniques and processes for investigation and exploration for the brief but will need some guidance. Learners will need to consider and document the testing of materials, techniques and processes and choices made for the learning outcomes.

For P5, learners should be taught the vocabulary associated with fashion design and use technical terms appropriately when discussing and evaluating their work. This could take the form of handwritten annotations alongside their work or recordings of their discussions. Recorded discussions could be in the form of critiques, one-to-one discussions or group presentations. Learners should be encouraged to discuss all their work including experimental, developmental and final products. They will need to be taught how to record the process of analysing, modifying and refining ideas for all their working processes. When reviewing outcomes, learners need to analyse the successes and failures of their work.

M1 requires learners to use a range of pattern drafting techniques and processes effectively.

M2 requires learners to use construction techniques and processes effectively. The tasks set for fulfilment of these criteria may be similar to those for P2 but learners will demonstrate greater skill and confidence. Assessment evidence might also take a similar format to that for P2.

For M3, learners should demonstrate that they can develop effective ideas and outcomes to meet a given brief through exploration of a range of alternative materials, techniques and processes safely. At merit level, learners will show a more experimental approach to their work and greater confidence in their manipulation of materials and techniques in order to achieve desired effects.

Evidence for M4 could be integrated with the evidence for M1, M2 and M3. Evidence of discussions for M4 might take the form of competent handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or recordings of their evaluations. It could also include learners' annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with effective notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a range of materials and techniques. This evidence could also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, learners will creatively and independently use diverse pattern drafting techniques, demonstrating skilful manipulation with in-depth understanding.

For D2, learners will creatively and independently use diverse construction techniques, demonstrating skilful manipulation with in-depth understanding. Assessment evidence for these criteria might take a similar format to that for the criteria at pass and merit grade levels.

For D3, learners are required to demonstrate imaginative development of ideas and outcomes to meet set briefs. Their ideas will be communicated creatively and fluently. Learners will show that they can experiment independently with and explore a wide range of alternative fashion materials, techniques and processes creatively and safely.

Evidence for D4 might be integrated with the evidence for D1, D2 and D3. Evidence of discussions for D4 might take the form of confident handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or articulate recordings of their evaluations. This could include learners' confidently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a wide range of materials and techniques. This evidence could also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 1: Cubism</b>	Fashion designer researching new range based on Cubism.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>research showing the development of ideas</li> <li>a range of sketches, trials, samples, swatches, thumbnails etc</li> <li>evidence that health and safety practice in the studio or workshop has been observed</li> <li>notes, reviews, evaluations</li> <li>final outcome</li> <li>presentation.</li> </ul>
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 2: Wraps</b>	Pattern maker learning new skills.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>research showing the development of ideas</li> <li>a range of sketches, trials, samples, swatches, thumbnails etc</li> <li>evidence that health and safety practice in the studio or workshop has been observed</li> <li>final outcome</li> <li>presentation.</li> </ul>
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 3: Transformation</b>	Designer learning new skills with different fabrics.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>research showing the development of ideas</li> <li>a range of sketches, trials, samples, swatches, thumbnails etc</li> <li>evidence that health and safety practice in the studio or workshop has been observed</li> <li>final outcome</li> <li>presentation.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Drawing	2D Visual Communication	Pattern Construction for Fashion and Clothing
Explore Printmaking	3D Visual Communication	Pattern Development for Fashion and Clothing
An Accessory Project	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	Pattern Grading for Fashion and Clothing
	Working with Textiles Briefs	Production Techniques for Fashion and Clothing

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCS Skills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work
- DES38 Manage design realisation
- DES39 Manage a design project

## Skillfast-UK, Textiles and Material Design

- HS1 Health, safety and security at work
- D1 Research design information and ideas for textiles and materials using a range of techniques
- D3 Develop design responses for textiles and materials to meet agreed requirements
- D2 Develop and communicate design ideas for textiles and materials
- D4 Contribute to producing detailed designs for textiles and materials
- D5 Contribute to realising design prototypes for textiles and materials
- D6 Contribute to realising final textiles and materials design
- D9 Clarify textile and material design briefs and research information
- D10 Develop alternative textile and material design ideas
- D12 Develop, produce and present design responses
- D14 Realise design prototypes
- D15 Plan and contribute to the realisation of final textile and material design
- D13 Plan and manage design work.

## Essential resources

For this unit learners should have access to appropriate equipment for the production of fashion solutions to given design briefs. The resources required will vary according to the specific technical and material demands of the fashion projects chosen, but are likely to include tools and equipment for pattern drafting and garment construction and specialist journals and reference materials.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should try to establish links with local professional fashion designers and companies. Learners are enlightened and motivated by finding out how a professional works, what inspires them, what they make, the materials and techniques they use, what studio space and equipment they have and how the need to make money affects what they make. Open days at FE and HE establishments are also of interest to broaden learners' horizons and to show how fashion can be manipulated and transformed.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and future employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects', for example, to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

Skillfast-UK, the sector skills council for fashion and textiles, gives details on their careers web pages ([www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob](http://www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob)) about careers advice and industry information, plus regularly updated news and events pages.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Aldrich W - *Fabric, Form and Flat Pattern Cutting* (Wiley Blackwell, 2007) ISBN 978-1405136204

Braddock S and Mahony M - *Techno Textiles 2: Revolutionary Fabrics for Fashion and Design No 2* (Thames & Hudson, 2005) ISBN 978-0500512456

Da Cruz E - *Fashioning Fabrics: Contemporary Textiles in Fashion* (Black Dog Publishing, 2006) ISBN 978-1904772415

Dawber M - *Big Book of Fashion Illustration* (Batsford Ltd, 2007) ISBN 978-

0713490459 Fogg M - *Print in Fashion* (Batsford Ltd, 2006) ISBN 978-

0713490121

Jenkyn Jones S - *Fashion Design* (Portfolio Series) (Laurence King Publishing, 2005) ISBN 978-1856694360

Martin R - *The Fashion Book* (Phaidon, 2001) ISBN 978-0714841182

McKelvey K - *Fashion Source Book* (Wiley Blackwell, 2006) ISBN 978-1405126939

McKelvey K and Munslow J - *Fashion Design: Process, Innovation and Practice* (John Wiley, 2009) ISBN 978-1444313000

O'Hara Callan G - *Dictionary of Fashion and Fashion Designers* (Thames & Hudson, 2008) ISBN 978-

0500203996 Peacock J - *Fashion Accessories: The Complete 20th Century Sourcebook* (Thames & Hudson, 2000)

ISBN 978-0500019979

Seaman J - *Foundation in Fashion Design and Illustration* (B T Batsford, 2001) ISBN 978-0713487039

Sorger R and Udale J - *The Fundamentals of Fashion Design* (AVA Publishing SA, 2006) ISBN 978-

2940373390 Tallon K - *Creative Computer Fashion Design with Illustrator* (Batsford Ltd, 2006) ISBN

978-0713490220 Tatham C and Seaman J - *Fashion Design Drawing Course* (Thames & Hudson, 2003)

ISBN 978-0764124730

### Websites

[www.artchive.com](http://www.artchive.com)

Articles and images for educational use

[www.vam.ac.uk](http://www.vam.ac.uk)

The website for the Victoria and Albert Museum

[www.whitworth.manchester.ac.uk](http://www.whitworth.manchester.ac.uk)

The Whitworth Art Gallery

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	researching contextual references in response to the brief
Creative thinkers	generating ideas and exploring possibilities for the given brief
Reflective learners	reviewing and reflecting on their work and acting on the outcomes to modify, refine and improve their work
Team workers	taking part in group discussions to analyse the brief taking part in group presentations of work and commenting on the work of others
Self-managers	organising time and resources and prioritising actions when producing work for the brief.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	planning and carrying out research into the brief experimenting with media, materials and techniques to develop their own ideas
Creative thinkers	investigating alternative ways of developing their ideas adapting their ideas through ongoing analysis of their progress and refinement of their work deciding on the most effective final outcome
Reflective learners	setting goals for the various stages of their work - research, development, final outcome acting on feedback and refining their work accordingly evaluating their experiences and learning to inform progress
Team workers	working with others in the group - eg helping each other to prepare screens for printing and assisting with the printing process
Self-managers	seeking out new challenges and showing flexibility when priorities change - eg access to equipment, materials etc responding positively to change, seeking advice and support where needed.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching historical and contextual references
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	organising a plan of work for the project
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	storing research information
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	
Troubleshoot	
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	creating and finding sources in response to the Brief, and adapting them for use
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	exploring, extracting and assessing the relevance of information from textile related websites
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	developing ideas in an experimental way using ICT tools organising work
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	communicating with others in the group if working on a group-based project

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	using estimation and calculation to work out quantities need - materials, time etc
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	
Use appropriate checking procedures and evaluate their effectiveness at each stage	
Interpret and communicate solutions to practical problems in familiar and unfamiliar routine contexts and situations	
Draw conclusions and provide mathematical justifications	
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	taking part in group discussions to analyse possible responses to the brief taking part in group discussions during presentations of finished project briefs
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	researching historical and contextual references in response to the brief and using them to inform their own work
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	writing critical evaluations of their work.

# Unit 10: Working with Textiles Briefs

Unit code: H/502/4861

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to introduce learners to textile design briefs which will enable them to undertake projects in the specialist area of textiles. Learners will experiment with a range of specialist materials, techniques and processes in order to develop ideas and outcomes which reflect current professional practice.

## ● Unit introduction

Textile designers explore ideas, materials and techniques in response to self-defined or given briefs. In order to develop their own professional skills, they work with different materials and experiment widely to explore the potential of a chosen medium and its suitability for the task. They research widely from different sources to gain inspiration to help them develop ideas. Professionals continuously review the progress of their work to ensure it meets their creative intentions and the requirements of the brief.

Working with textiles involves the manipulation and treatment of materials, visual and structural elements and the resolution of functional and aesthetic criteria. The aim of this unit is to enable learners to understand how to respond to specialist textiles briefs and find out how a professional textiles designer works. Learners will be able to develop their skills and understanding by exploring specialist textiles materials, techniques and processes. They will need to learn how materials can be used in a rich variety of ways to create different effects and results to achieve their intentions. Learners will be able to experiment with both traditional and non-traditional materials and techniques in order to fully explore their creativity in this discipline.

Learners will develop skills in surface pattern design and assemblage through specialist textile techniques and processes using different media and materials. This will also mean working with the accompanying specialist tools and equipment which learners will learn to use and look after carefully and correctly. Learners will be made aware of the health and safety issues associated with the materials and techniques they study.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use textiles materials, techniques and processes
- 2 Be able to develop work to meet textiles briefs
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of textiles work.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to use textiles materials, techniques and processes

*Textiles materials:* fabrics eg natural, synthetic, transparent, opaque, weights, textures; yarns; threads eg hand spun, fleece, machine, embroidery, tapestry; inks; dyes eg ink-based, multi-purpose; materials eg non-traditional, found (chicken wire, clay, glass, paper, grasses, twigs, pebbles)

*Techniques and processes:* embroidery eg hand, machine; construction methods eg weaving, knitting, felt-making; printing eg block, mono, stencil, resist; assembly eg cutting, joining, constructing

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment; following appropriate COSHH guidance on materials and workshop practice

## 2 Be able to develop work to meet textiles briefs

*Textiles briefs:* functional needs eg designing fashion fabrics, interior design fabrics; aesthetic considerations eg 2D, 3D forms; analysis eg purpose, target market, needs, preferences, technical factors, production process (print, weave, knit, embroidery, felt making), cost, performance, scale, contemporary professional practice

*Selecting materials, techniques and processes:* aesthetic qualities; fitness for purpose (alternative options, properties, characteristics, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential, suitability of materials)

## 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of textiles work

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*Production process:* technical competencies; creative abilities; time management; costings

*Sources of information:* self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, tutors, client; documentation eg notes, minutes of meetings, notes from feedback, production diaries, visits

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use textiles materials, techniques and processes safely [IE; CT; SM]	<b>M1</b> use materials, techniques and processes to meet the brief coherently and effectively	<b>D1</b> use diverse materials, techniques and processes to meet the brief creatively and independently
<b>P2</b> develop ideas and outcomes to meet textiles briefs [CT; RL; SM]	<b>M2</b> develop effective ideas and outcomes to meet textiles briefs	<b>D2</b> develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet textiles briefs
<b>P3</b> select appropriate materials, techniques and processes to meet textiles briefs [IE]	<b>M3</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D3</b> evaluate and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.
<b>P4</b> discuss successful textiles work.		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit has been designed to give learners the opportunity to undertake projects in the specialist area of textiles. Typically this would be through setting briefs that reflect current professional practice. Depending on the choice of specialist units, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as fashion, fine art or design crafts. Although most learners' work will be carried out in a studio/workshop environment, it is expected that this unit be delivered through visits to exhibitions and practitioners' workshops and visiting expert speakers to put it in a vocational context. Class discussion and research using the library and internet resources are essential aspects of delivery.

This unit is one of a series of similar specialist units that have been designed to give learners the opportunity to extend their use of visual language developed in *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication*, and to develop their experience of working with materials, techniques and technology in those units. The skills and understanding that learners develop in textiles will provide an important resource for work produced and assessed through *Unit 4: Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design*.

Tutors should consider integrating the delivery and assessment of this unit with other relevant units the learner is taking. In planning integrated delivery of units through project briefs, tutors should be aware of the need to track the relevant criteria of the units being covered.

Learners need to be able to choose suitable material, techniques and processes to realise their ideas and respond to briefs. Learners should review their use of techniques and processes; discussing and commenting on the properties and characteristics of different textiles materials, techniques and processes. They should also learn to review and evaluate the quality of their own and others' work. Learners should be encouraged to keep all evidence of the different stages and developments of their project briefs. Their sketchbooks and worksheets might record the development of their ideas, the effects and results of their experimentation with materials and techniques and how their skills might be improved. Learners will find regular discussion and feedback with peers and tutors very helpful and this is a good way of developing their use of critical vocabulary and technical terms in textile design.

Working in the studio can be dangerous. Learners will need to be aware of the health and safety issues relating to the media, materials and equipment they use. They should know how to reduce risks to themselves and others by thinking and working safely. A common sense approach should be emphasised, rather than merely referring to rules and regulations. Learners could keep a health and safety logbook, alternatively they could design storyboards, symbols or posters to record safe practice visually. Tutor observation of safe working practice through witness statements is also acceptable.

Learning outcome 1 should be delivered primarily through practical studio and workshop experiences. Although selection and use of materials and techniques will depend on the individual centre's available resources, it is expected that learners are given access to as broad a range as possible. Learners should be encouraged to use techniques and processes appropriately but also creatively, mixing the materials, techniques and technology wherever possible. They will need to learn respect for the specialist tools and the function they perform and how to look after the tools and equipment correctly, working safely at all times. Investigating professional work will enable learners to gain insight into how professionals work in a textiles context and help them decide on their direction vocationally. They could do this through visiting practitioners' workshops and studios.

The delivery for learning outcomes 2 and 3 can be integrated. They are both about learners developing work to meet a textiles brief and understanding how it happens. Delivery techniques should be varied and stimulating, encouraging learners to investigate the creative use of materials in a textiles context. Initially this outcome is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through an inspiring presentation of slides or images. Tutors should encourage learners' participation in analysing the brief through asking probing questions and develop learners' creative abilities in generating exciting, innovative ideas. Group activities would be beneficial at this level, with learners discussing ideas around a set brief, looking at possible options for individual investigation. Learners may have quite different areas of personal preference they would like to investigate. They could be encouraged to try different approaches and methods individually, then meet to share the results. Meeting with a professional would inform learners about vocational textiles practice. Learners could be asked to plan and manage this, and identify questions to ask the practitioner.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to the unit and structure of the programme - to include a tour of the textile department and discussion about health and safety issues.
<b>Assignment 1: Insects</b> - group discussion on the ways in which this brief could be interpreted. To include ideas for research and new textile techniques.
Insects brief: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• learners begin research on the theme of 'insects'</li> <li>• new textile skills introduced eg dyed/printed textiles</li> <li>• learners develop basic ideas to meet the brief by selecting appropriate materials, techniques and processes for initial research</li> <li>• learners record health and safety considerations as appropriate</li> <li>• learners produce final outcomes in response to the brief (independent study)</li> <li>• learners evaluate their work and present outcomes to the group.</li> </ul>
<b>Assignment 2: Structures</b> - group discussion on the ways in which this brief could be interpreted. To include ideas for research and new textile techniques.
Structures brief: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• learners begin research on the theme of 'structures'</li> <li>• new textile skills introduced eg constructed textiles</li> <li>• learners develop basic ideas to meet the brief by selecting appropriate materials, techniques and processes for initial research</li> <li>• learners record health and safety considerations as appropriate</li> <li>• learners produce final outcomes in response to the brief (independent study)</li> <li>• learners evaluate their work and present outcomes to the group.</li> </ul>

## Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

**Assignment 3: Water** - group discussion on the ways in which this brief could be interpreted. To include ideas for research and new textile techniques.

Water brief:

- learners begin research on the theme of 'water'
- new textile skills introduced eg fine art/fashion textiles
- learners develop basic ideas to meet the brief by selecting appropriate materials, techniques and processes for initial research
- learners record health and safety considerations as appropriate
- learners produce final outcomes in response to the brief (independent study)
- learners evaluate their work and present outcomes to the group
- learners select and present work for final assessment of the unit.

## Assessment

P1 requires learners to use materials, techniques and processes competently, with an awareness of safe working practices. Evidence for these criteria could be gathered through informal presentation of annotated sketches or worksheets, a witness statement or observation record(s).

For P2, learners are expected to develop basic ideas and outcomes to meet textiles briefs. They will select appropriate materials, techniques and processes in response to the briefs' requirements but at pass level would use a limited range of skills. Evidence for this criterion might be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, and samples, chosen to reflect the development of ideas and skills as well as an awareness of safe working practices.

For P3, learners should be able to select appropriate materials, techniques and processes for investigation and exploration for the brief but will need some guidance. Learners will need to consider and document the testing of materials, techniques and processes and choices made for the outcomes.

For P4, learners should be taught the vocabulary associated with textiles and use technical terms appropriately when discussing and evaluating their work. This could take the form of handwritten annotations alongside their work or recordings of their discussions. Recorded discussions could be in the form of critiques, one-to-one discussions or group presentations. Learners should be encouraged to discuss all their work, including experimental, developmental and final products. They will need to be taught how to record the process of analysing, modifying and refining ideas for all their working processes. When reviewing outcomes, learners need to analyse the successes and failures of their work.

For M1, learners are required to use textiles materials, techniques and processes effectively. The tasks set for fulfilment of these criteria may be similar to those for P1 but learners will demonstrate greater skill and confidence. Assessment evidence might also take a similar format to that for P1.

For M2, learners should be able to develop a range of effective ideas and outcomes in response to set briefs. They will investigate a range of alternative materials, techniques and processes and at merit level are expected to bring together skills with ideas. Evidence for this criterion might take the same format as that for P2. Set tasks may be similar as those for pass level, for learners at this level, tutors should also expect learners to carry out more creative experimentation, demonstrating a deeper understanding of the materials, techniques and processes used.

Evidence for M3 could be integrated with the evidence for M1 and M2. Evidence of discussions for M3 might take the form of competent handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or recordings of their evaluations. It might also include learners' competently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with effective notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a range of materials and techniques. This evidence could also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, learners will creatively and independently use diverse textiles techniques and processes, demonstrating skilful manipulation with in-depth understanding, while meeting the requirements of the brief.

For D2, learners are required to develop their ideas and outcomes imaginatively in response to given textiles briefs in diverse ways. This might be evidenced more formally at distinction level, if considered appropriate, with a presentation to the class. It is expected that learners' work be fully supported by annotated worksheets and sketches; they should produce a wide range of developmental studies and samples demonstrating their skilful and original manipulation of materials and techniques.

Evidence for D3 might be integrated with the evidence for D1 and D2. Evidence of discussions for D3 might take the form of confident handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or articulate recordings of their evaluations. This could also include learners' confidently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a wide range of materials and techniques. This evidence might also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, M1, D1 P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3 P4	<b>Assignment 1: Insects</b>	Textile artist learning new skills.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>research showing the development of ideas</li> <li>a range of sketches, trials, samples, swatches, thumbnails etc</li> <li>evidence that health and safety practice in the studio or workshop has been observed</li> <li>annotation</li> <li>final outcome</li> <li>presentation.</li> </ul>
P1, M1, D1 P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3 P4	<b>Assignment 2: Structures</b>	Textile artist develops new construction techniques.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>research showing the development of ideas</li> <li>a range of sketches, trials, samples, swatches, thumbnails etc</li> <li>evidence that health and safety practice in the studio or workshop has been observed</li> <li>annotation</li> <li>final outcome</li> <li>presentation.</li> </ul>
P1, M1, D1 P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3 P4	<b>Assignment 3: Water</b>	Textile designer producing work on a specific theme <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>select ideas for effective development</li> <li>explore selected materials and experiment with relevant media and methods</li> <li>show ongoing analysis of their progress and refinement of their work.</li> </ul>	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>research showing the development of ideas</li> <li>a range of sketches, trials, samples, swatches, thumbnails etc</li> <li>evidence that health and safety practice in the studio or workshop has been observed</li> <li>annotation</li> <li>final outcome</li> <li>presentation.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore and Create a Surface Relief	2D Visual Communication	3D Sculptural Textiles
Explore 3D Design Crafts	3D Visual Communication	Papermaking and Printmaking in Textiles
	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	Fabric Manipulation
	Working with Fashion Design Briefs	Feltmaking and Felting
		Woven Textiles
		Knitted Textiles
		Embroidered Textiles

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work

Skillfast-UK, Textiles and Material Design

- HS1 Health, safety and security at work
- D1 Research design information and ideas for textiles and materials using a range of techniques
- D3 Develop design responses for textiles and materials to meet agreed requirements

- D2 Develop and communicate design ideas for textiles and materials
- D4 Contribute to producing detailed designs for textiles and materials
- D5 Contribute to realising design prototypes for textiles and materials
- D6 Contribute to realising final textiles and materials design
- D9 Clarify textile and material design briefs and research information
- D10 Develop alternative textile and material design ideas
- D12 Develop, produce and present design responses
- D13 Plan and manage design work
- D14 Realise design prototypes
- D15 Plan and contribute to the realisation of final textile and material design.

## Essential resources

For this unit learners should have access to appropriate textiles equipment including both traditional and contemporary technologies, for example, hand embroidery and computerised sewing machines, knitting machines and looms. Both natural and manufactured materials should be available, for example paper, wire, tissue, gauze, silk, wool, Hessian.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should try to establish links with local professional textile designers and companies. Learners are enlightened and motivated by finding out how a professional works, what inspires them, what they make, what materials and techniques they use, what studio space and equipment they have and how the need to make money affects what they make. Open days at FE and HE establishments are also of interest to broaden learners' horizons and to show how textiles can be manipulated and transformed.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and future employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects', for example, to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

Skillfast-UK, the sector skills council for fashion and textiles, gives information about careers advice and industry on their careers web pages ([www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob](http://www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob)) plus regularly updated news and events pages.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Barnett A - *Examining Textiles Technology: Student Book* (Heinemann, 1997) ISBN 978-0435421045

Beal M - *Fusing Fabric: Creative Cutting, Bonding and Mark Making with the Soldering Iron* (Batsford, 2007) ISBN 978-0713490688

Braddock S and Mahony M - *Techno Textiles: Revolutionary Fabrics for Fashion and Design* (Thames & Hudson, 1999) ISBN 978-0500280966

Greenlees K - *Creating Sketchbooks for Embroiderers and Textile Artists* (Batsford Ltd, 2005) ISBN 978-0713489576

Grey M - *From Image to Stitch* (Batsford, 2008) ISBN 978-1906388027

Grey M - *Stitch, Dissolve, Distort in Machine Embroidery* (Batsford, 2006) ISBN 978-

0713489965 Grey M - *Textile Translations: Mixed Media* (D4daisy Books, 2008) ISBN 978-1906388027

Harris G - *Complete Feltmaking: Easy Techniques and 25 Great Projects* (Collins and Brown, 2008) ISBN 978-1843404767

Holmes V - *Creative Recycling in Embroidery* (Batsford, 2006) ISBN 978-

0713489866 Hughes A - *Stitch, Cloth, Paper and Paint* (Search Press Ltd, 2008) ISBN

978-1844482337 Issett R - *Print, Pattern and Colour* (Batsford, 2007) ISBN 978-0713490374

Stein S - *Fabric Art Workshop* (Creative Publishing Int, 2007) ISBN 978-1589233287

### Journals

*Crafts*

*Magazine*

*Creative*

*Review Design*

*Week New*

*Design*

### Websites

[www.artchive.com](http://www.artchive.com)

Articles and images for educational use

[www.craftscouncil.org.uk](http://www.craftscouncil.org.uk)

The national development agency for contemporary crafts in the UK

[www.designmuseum.org.uk](http://www.designmuseum.org.uk)

The national strategic body for design

[www.vam.ac.uk](http://www.vam.ac.uk)

The website for the Victoria and Albert Museum

[www.whitworth.manchester.ac.uk](http://www.whitworth.manchester.ac.uk)

The Whitworth Art Gallery

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	researching contextual references in response to the brief
Creative thinkers	generating ideas and exploring possibilities for the given brief
Reflective learners	reviewing and reflecting on their work and acting on the outcomes to modify, refine and improve their work
Team workers	taking part in group discussions to analyse the brief taking part in group presentations of work and commenting on the work of others
Self-managers	organising time and resources and prioritising actions when producing work for the brief.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	planning and carrying out research into the brief experimenting with media, materials and techniques to develop their own ideas
Creative thinkers	investigating alternative ways of developing their ideas adapting their ideas through ongoing analysis of their progress and refinement of their work deciding on the most effective final outcome
Reflective learners	setting goals for the various stages of their work - research, development, final outcome acting on feedback and refining their work accordingly evaluating their experiences and learning to inform progress
Team workers	working with others in the group - eg helping each other to prepare screens for printing and assisting with the printing process
Self-managers	seeking out new challenges and showing flexibility when priorities change - eg access to equipment, materials responding positively to change, seeking advice and support where needed.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching historical and contextual references
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	organising a plan of work for the project
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	storing research information
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	creating and finding sources in response to the brief, and adapting them for use
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	exploring, extracting and assessing the relevance of information from textile related websites
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	developing ideas in an experimental way using ICT tools organising work
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	communicating with others in the group if working on a group-based project
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	using estimation and calculation to work out quantities needed - eg dyes, inks
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	<p>taking part in group discussions to analyse possible responses to the brief</p> <p>taking part in group discussions during presentations of finished project briefs</p>
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	researching historical and contextual references in response to the brief and using them to inform their own work
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	writing critical evaluations of their work.

# Unit 11: Working with 3D Design Briefs

Unit code: K/502/4862

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to enable learners to explore, experiment with, and understand how to respond to 3D design briefs. The unit will involve learners in carrying out research from a range of primary and secondary sources appropriate to their brief.

## ● Unit introduction

Designers explore ideas, materials and techniques in response to self-defined or given briefs. In order to develop their professional skills, they work with different materials and experiment widely to explore the potential of a chosen medium and its suitability for the task. They research widely from different sources to gain inspiration to help them develop ideas. Professionals continuously review the progress of their work to ensure it meets their creative intentions and the requirements of the brief.

An essential capability of 3D design is the ability to communicate 3D structures through 2D drafting media, increasingly using digital software. A valuable part of a learner's research will be to learn what a contemporary 3D designer does and the range of possible materials and techniques they employ to communicate their ideas most effectively. Learners will investigate historical and cultural visual arts to explore similar resources and constraints. Their wide-ranging research will inform their understanding of how to use 3D materials and techniques to express their creative intentions. Learners will review the progress and refine the process of their work through ongoing and final analysis in response to the given briefs.

Learners will explore and experiment with a variety of non-resistant and resistant materials to investigate the manipulation, treatment and creative possibilities of 3D design materials and techniques. This will involve 3D making techniques for carving, constructing and modelling, essential for using different materials and techniques successfully. Learners will need to learn about the care of and correct use of specialist 3D tools and equipment. They will also be made aware of the health and safety issues associated with the materials and techniques they study.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use 3D design materials, techniques and processes
- 2 Be able to develop ideas to meet 3D design briefs
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of 3D design work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to use 3D design materials, techniques and processes

*3D design processes:* planning; making eg construction, carving, moulding, drilling, fixing, joining, casting, CAD/CAM, weaving, assembling

*3D materials:* eg non-resistant materials (plaster, card, paper, lightweight wood, string, soft wire, plastic sheet, glues and adhesives), resistant materials (glass, metals, wood, wood-based products and rigid plastics)

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment and following the appropriate COSHH guidance on materials and techniques

### 2 Be able to develop ideas to meet 3D design briefs

*3D design briefs:* products eg ceramics, furniture, lighting, consumer and electrical goods, industrial products, interiors, environments, retail displays, exhibitions; analysis of briefs; response eg target market, needs, preferences; functions eg technical factors, size, scale, performance, ease of use, cost, method, scale of production

*Selecting materials and techniques:* qualities eg fitness for purpose, aesthetics, alternative options; exploring properties eg characteristics, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential

*Meeting the brief:* eg artefact purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, working materials, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, community, commercial, professional, success (projects, audience, influence)

### 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of 3D design work

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg image purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, props, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, technical qualities, sustainability, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*3D design work:* own work; others' work eg peers, professionals

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use 3D design materials, techniques and processes safely [IE, CT, SM, RL]	<b>M1</b> explore 3D design materials, techniques and processes effectively	<b>D1</b> integrate diverse 3D design materials, techniques and processes creatively and independently
<b>P2</b> select appropriate materials, techniques and processes to meet 3D design briefs [CT, TW, SM]	<b>M2</b> develop effective, coherent ideas and outcomes to meet 3D design briefs	<b>D2</b> develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet 3D design briefs
<b>P3</b> develop ideas and outcomes to meet 3D design briefs [IE, CT]	<b>M3</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D3</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.
<b>P4</b> discuss successful 3D design work. [IE, RL]		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

Tutors delivering this unit can address all learning outcomes through the two suggested assignments shown in the outline learning plan. Assignment number 1 is a research-based task that will generate some of the evidence for learning outcome 3. Tutors should deliver a presentation that shows examples of 3D design work across a range of disciplines. Learners should record their observations in their work journals or sketchbooks. Learners should then use information gained from the tutor presentation to further their research by sourcing and discussing additional examples of 3D design. Information gathered should be used as a platform from which learners launch their own practical explorations in their personal project, assignment number 2.

Learners will need to work through the activities and stages shown in assignment number 2, and record all the stages of their research and ongoing design development work. Tutors should direct learners to produce a plan for their work, including production methods, materials and timescales. Information on health and safety will also need to be included. On completion of this activity, tutors should sign off the plan and learners can then move to the practical production stage. These activities will produce evidence for learning outcome 1 and learning outcome 2. These outcomes are developed through learners working to produce all relevant test pieces, maquettes or working models, prototypes and the final piece or pieces. Tutors will need to ensure that learners have access to technical support and that all aspects of health and safety are carefully observed.

Ongoing evaluation will also need to feature in this stage of the assignment, as this will provide a sound basis for a more in-depth evaluation than leaving this aspect of the unit until the completion of practical work. These activities will provide further evidence for learning outcome 3. Learners will need to evaluate and review their practical output against the constraints of the design brief they have worked to. They may consider how effectively their outcomes meet the purpose of the brief. Learners should review their use of materials and techniques and compare them to the production processes they researched. In this way the unit will return learners to the skills and understanding required when analysing and interpreting a design brief.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Unit read through and outline scope of the unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Research into 3D Design Briefs</b> Group read through. Tutor presentation of examples of 3D design work using a range of materials in advertising, graphic design, social, fine art, fashion, reportage, industrial, scientific etc. Learners research independently into aspects of 3D design briefs. Tutor input, review. Learners present examples and compile research. Learners discuss conclusions.
<b>Assignment 2: Personal Project</b> (themes can be set by tutor but can be broad enough to encourage learners to take ownership) Stage 1 - identify subject - learners can relate subject to previous work in other units and/or ideas generated from research tasks in assignment 1. Stage 2 - produce a plan for the production of the piece - work in liaison with tutor/s and technician/s to ensure health and safety and risk assessments are carried out. Stage 3 - sign off plan, ensure all equipment is ready as required. Stage 4 - produce the piece/s, working independently. Tutor input, review. Stage 5 - ongoing problem solving and review/adaptation. Stage 5 - prepare presentation of work. Stage 6 - present piece; evaluate reactions and feedback.

## Assessment

For P1, learners will use 3D design techniques to experiment and produce test, samples, maquettes and final pieces. The level of skill and handling, and the empathy with the inherent qualities in the materials, will be limited. Learners will comply with all the necessary health and safety and COSHH legislation when producing their work, and maintain good studio practice throughout the practical assignment.

For P2, learners will select a limited range of materials, techniques and processes. These will meet the requirements of the brief, but will not extend the possibilities offered by combining or experimenting with materials. The range of materials chosen will be obvious; risks will not be taken at the planning stage, and ideas will not be stretched.

For P3, learners will be able to produce a basic set of design ideas in response to the brief. The scope of their research will not necessarily have extended that given in the tutor presentation. These will tend to be obvious and lack exploration.

For P4, learners will be able to discuss their work in terms of the design brief. Conclusions reached will tend to be oversimplistic. Links between the results and processes used, choices of materials and areas for development may be noted, but conclusions reached will be obvious. Learners will consider how professional 3D designers have worked with similar briefs. Evaluative skills will not be applied in any great depth. There will be some understanding of how designers react to design briefs, but this will not be perceptive.

For M1, learners will be able to explore more confidently a wider range of materials and processes than those at pass grade. The choices made will reflect a deeper involvement and understanding with the design process than in work assessed at P1. Learners will use their chosen 3D materials and processes consistently through their design development and production activities. Work produced will demonstrate an effective control of materials.

For M2, learners will develop ideas for the design brief that address the intended purpose and function of the final outcome effectively. Ideas will be recorded and expressed in a clear and effective manner.

For M3, learners will be able to discuss their work as set against the design brief in a considered manner. Ideas and perceptions will be clearly explained. Learners will be able to consider the work of other 3D designers with some sense of purpose. They will outline the designers' interpretations, choice of materials and application, and make comparisons with their own work.

For D1, learners will be able to select their materials and identify processes to be used in their practical work. Their rationale for choosing these specific materials and how they use them will be clearly articulated. Learners will use the materials and processes they have selected in an innovative way. This may involve using making techniques in adventurous ways, or combine different techniques and processes in original ways.

For D2, learners will be able to develop diverse and exciting ideas that fully meet the design requirements of the brief. This may involve exploration of different themes and source materials.

For D3, learners will be able to explain their output in an informed manner. They will be able to demonstrate how their ideas and practical work meet the demands of the brief with perception. They will be able to link evaluations of their own work to other 3D designers with a sense of clarity and purpose. They will identify approaches connected to the designers' interpretation, choice of materials and application that make their work successful.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P2, M2, D2 P4, M3, D3	<b>Assignment 1: Research into 3D Design Briefs</b>	A 3D designer is exploring iconic designs in their field, and is aiming to identify the factors employed by the designers to make the resulting pieces unique.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>work journals, containing notes from tutor presentation and own research</li> <li>presentation by learners.</li> </ul>
P1, M1, D1 P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3 P4	<b>Assignment 2: Personal Project</b>	A designer is developing a range of functional items for a retailer. The initial designs are ready for presentation, and the designer is planning to get approval to move to the production stage of the commission.	Learners' preliminary work and initial ideas. Learners' presentations of ideas for project. Learners' use of 3D materials, processes and techniques to explore the design development process. Tutor observation of studio practice. Learners' practical work and final outcomes. Learners' review of working practices and outcomes. Presentation at close of assignment to include evaluation and review of the design process.

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore 3D Design Crafts	2D Visual Communication	Design Methods in Art and Design
	3D Visual Communication	Design Principles in Art and Design
	Working with Textile Briefs	

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work.

## Essential resources

Delivery of this unit will focus on learners exploring research through an initial assignment. This will be followed up with ideas development and practical production against a set or self-generated 3D design brief.

Learners will need access to specialist 3D design studios, depending on the range available in the centre. They will also require access to specific technical support within the 3D area.

Learners should incorporate safe working practices into their learning as part of the practical work in the unit.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

This unit can be delivered through a live project. Centres should aim to develop links with appropriate local organisations, willing to support learners in producing work for a specific aim. Local galleries/museums may be able to work in partnership to give learners 3D related vocational contexts, such as model making for a coming exhibition. There may be opportunities to secure a project involving the production of 3D graphics based pieces eg models for proposed signage.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects', for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

De Saumarez M - *Basic Design: The Dynamics of Visual Form* (Herbert, 2007) ISBN 978-0713683660

Dormer P - *Design Since 1945* (Thames & Hudson, 1993) ISBN 978-0500202616

Feill C and P - *Designing the 21st Century* (Taschen, 2005) ISBN 978-822848029

Feill C and P - *Industrial Design A-Z* (Taschen, 2006) ISBN 978-822850572

Forty A - *Objects of Desire* (Thames & Hudson, 1986) ISBN 978-0500274125

Herbert T and Huggins K - *The Decorative Tile in Architect and Interiors*

Phaidon, 2000) ISBN 978-0714839790

Lidwell W et al - *Universal Principles of Design: 115 Ways to Enhance Usability, Influence Perception, Increase Appeal, Make Better Design Decisions and Teach Through Design* (Rockport Publishers Inc, 2010) ISBN 978-1592535893

Massey A - *Interior Design of the 20th Century* (Thames & Hudson, 2001) ISBN 978-0500203466

Mills J - *Encyclopedia of Sculptural Techniques* (B T Batsford, 2005) ISBN 978-0713489309

Norman D A - *Emotional Design* (Basic Books, 2005) ISBN 978-0465051366

Norman D A - *The Design of Everyday Things* (Basic Books, 2002) ISBN 978-0465067107

Powers A - *Nature in Design* (Conran Octopus, 2002) ISBN 978-1840912579

Sparke P - *Design in Context* (Bloomsbury, 1991) ISBN 978-0747510949

Terraroli V - *Skira Dictionary of Modern Decorative Arts* (University of Turin, 2001) ISBN 978-8884910257

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	carrying out research into the field of 3D design adapting ideas in response to results of 3D design media exploration considering 3D work against the design brief
Creative thinkers	exploring ideas for production of final piece using different 3D materials, techniques and processes
Reflective learners	considering alternative ideas and evaluating their strengths and weaknesses reviewing own work against the design brief reviewing others' work in 3D design
Team workers	working in 3D design studio and observing safe studio practice
Self-managers	managing the ideas generation process managing the production process
Effective participators	reviewing and explaining how others' work meets design requirements.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	sourcing information on different 3D materials and processes
Creative thinkers	looking at 3D items around the studio and home environments and considering fitness for purpose
Reflective learners	identifying different ways to explore materials and techniques.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	using 3D software to create designs
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	finding examples of 3D designers' work to compare with their own
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	sourcing information from websites and electronic publications about 3D designers, design briefs and iconic examples of design
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	using CAD/CAM or other digital means to produce 3D work
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	presenting findings on own and others' work
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	trying out different 3D CAD programmes
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	considering measurements, scaling and proportion in their practical work
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	taking part in critiques or group presentations
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	sourcing and reading information examples of 3D design and practitioners reading and absorbing information about health and safety relating to materials, processes and equipment to be used.
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	recording relevant technical information about equipment compiling information from reviews or presentations.



# Unit 12: Working with Interactive Media Briefs

Unit code: T/502/4864

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to enable learners to understand how to respond to interactive media briefs. Learners will research and explore the creative possibilities of interactive media ideas and techniques from self-defined or given briefs.

## ● Unit introduction

Interactive media involves using design and programming skills and digital technology to create interactive outcomes that combine sound, text and images. Professionals continuously review the progress of their work to ensure it meets their creative intentions and the requirements of the brief.

In this unit, learners will be able to develop their professional skills by working with different digital and other media and experiment widely to explore potential and suitability for the task. This will involve learners carrying out research into how effective interactive communication is achieved within interactive media design. Learners will evaluate different sources to gain inspiration and help them develop ideas. They will research interactive media products, explore how text and image have been designed and learn how sound and music is designed to enhance and reinforce information.

Learners will be able to design interfaces for ease of use and for effective communication. A valuable part of their research will be to learn what a contemporary professional interactive media product designer does and the range of possible digital and other techniques they employ. Learners will review the progress and refine the process of their work through ongoing analysis. The interactive media briefs given should be designed within a vocational context and should encourage and motivate learners to explore their ideas creatively to produce original outcomes. Learners will need to be shown how to use the specialist tools and equipment they will be using in this unit.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to develop ideas and outcomes to meet interactive media briefs
- 2 Be able to explore the use of interactive media products
- 3 Be able to use digital techniques and technology
- 4 Be able to review interactive media production work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to develop ideas and outcomes to meet interactive media briefs

*Interactive media briefs:* eg design-based briefs for websites, DVDs, CD ROMs, interactive TV, computer games

*Purpose:* eg educational, entertaining, informative, instructional, demonstrating specialist techniques

*Analysis of briefs:* eg target market; needs and preferences; message(s); information; communication; content; purpose

*Constraints:* eg budget, schedule, resources, legal and ethical, technical factors, method of reproduction, display, number of colours, resolution, use of logo, links with other products

*Selecting materials, techniques and processes:* eg technical and aesthetic qualities, fitness for purpose; properties eg characteristics, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; materials, techniques

### 2 Be able to explore the use of interactive media products

*Interactive media products:* eg DVDs, CD ROMs, interactive TV, computer games, portable devices websites, internet

*Target audience:* eg age, gender, demographic, lifestyle, presentation, text, sound, image, navigation

*Accessibility:* eg user groups, ease of use, interaction, platforms, convergence

### 3 Be able to use digital techniques and technology

*Development:* eg proposal pitch, mood boards, sketchbooks, storyboards, layout diagrams, production log

*Produce assets:* eg scanners, software tools, web authoring, interactive media authoring text; digital images eg digital photography, libraries, digital video, webcam, mobile phone, streaming; sound eg effects, voice, music; system diagrams for prototypes; flowcharts for mapping out user navigation.

*Production:* eg navigation, controls, typography, graphics, layout, colour, sound, video, animation, editing, buttons to link frames

### 4 Be able to review interactive media production work

*Evaluate own finished product:* eg compared with original intentions; technical qualities; aesthetic qualities; limitations

*Evaluate others' interactive media work:* eg examples researched, websites, DVDs, CD ROMs, interactive TV, computer games

*Production process:* eg technical competencies; creative abilities; time management

*Sources of information:* eg self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, tutors, client; documentation eg notes, minutes of meeting, production logs

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> develop ideas and final outcomes to meet interactive media briefs [IE]	<b>M1</b> develop effective ideas and outcomes to purposefully meet interactive media briefs	<b>D1</b> independently develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet interactive media briefs
<b>P2</b> select materials, techniques and processes for an interactive media brief [CT]	<b>M2</b> select a diverse range of materials, techniques and processes for an interactive media brief	<b>D2</b> independently select a diverse and well-chosen range of materials, techniques and processes for an interactive media brief
<b>P3</b> explore the use of interactive media products [RL; CT]	<b>M3</b> explore and compare the use of a diverse range of interactive media products	<b>D3</b> explore and evaluate the use of a comprehensive range of interactive media products independently
<b>P4</b> produce an interactive media product with integration of images, text and sound [TW; SM]	<b>M4</b> produce an effective and informed interactive media product with integration of images, text and sound	<b>D4</b> independently produce an imaginative interactive media product with integration of images, text and sound
<b>P5</b> describe interactive media work. [RL]	<b>M5</b> compare and contrast interactive media work.	<b>D5</b> evaluate interactive media work.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

Tutors should consider integrating the planning, delivery, and assessment of this unit with any other relevant specialist unit as part of the learner's programme of study. Depending on the choice of specialist units, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as graphic design or photography.

Learners need to be able to choose suitable interactive media techniques and processes to realise their ideas and respond to briefs. Learners should review their use of techniques and processes discussing and commenting on the properties and characteristics of different functions or software.

Learning outcome 1 should be delivered primarily through practical studio experiences. Interactive media briefs may be about DVDs, CD ROMs, interactive TV, computer games or presentations. Interactive media products may aim to be educational, entertaining or informative. Learners need to be taught to analyse briefs and identify what needs to be taken into account when developing a response. This might include answering questions on target markets, and their needs and preferences, the messages or information being communicated and the technical factors such as the method of reproduction, resolution or links with other projects.

Although selection of materials techniques and technology will depend on the individual centre's available resources, it is expected that learners be given access to a broad range of digital interactive media. Initially this learning outcome is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through an inspiring presentation of slides/images. Tutors should encourage learners to participate in analysing the brief through asking probing questions with an aim to develop their creative ability.

Delivery techniques should be varied and stimulating, encouraging learners to investigate the creative use of techniques and technology within an interactive media context. Group activities would be beneficial at this level, with learners discussing and developing ideas around a set brief, looking at possible options for individual investigation. Learners can be encouraged to explore different areas of personal preference and to create their own viable briefs. They might try different approaches and methods individually, and then meet to share the results.

For learning outcome 2 learners should research contemporary interactive media products such as DVDs, CD ROMs, interactive TV, portable devices, websites and the internet. Research into information about interactive media target markets, presentation qualities, accessibility and usability would be relevant. Learners will be expected to describe and analyse a range of different interactive media products. Their findings could be collated in sketchbooks or on worksheets as annotated visual studies. Learners should be able to use a range of appropriate technical terms and critical vocabulary; this could be achieved through creating glossaries of terms, distributing sample pieces of writing for discussion and tutorial guidance. Investigating how professionals work will give learners an insight into the processes involved in interactive media production and help them decide on the vocational direction they want to take. This learning outcome is probably most useful in informing and inspiring learners' responses to their brief (learning outcome 1), and their understanding of the application of digital techniques and processes (learning outcome 3).

Learning outcome 3 should be delivered through the context of the brief developed for learning outcome 1. Learners need to be taught a range of interactive media techniques and use of different technology, which should include input devices, software tools, sound and music, link buttons, interfaces and design techniques. Learners can apply the knowledge gained from exploring others' use of interactive media techniques to inform and develop their skills.

Learning outcome 4 should encourage learners to review and evaluate the quality of their own and others' work. Learners should be encouraged to keep all evidence of the different stages and development of their project briefs. Sketchbooks, worksheets, storyboards, printouts and digital formats could be used to record the development of ideas and the effects and results of their experimentation with techniques and technologies, along with how their skills might be improved.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to scope and structure of the unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Investigating Interactive Media Processes</b> Investigation into interactive media briefs led by tutor and learner discussions. Research into target markets as a group project. Learners develop ideas around a set brief. Learners present ideas as part of a presentation. Learners investigate technical factors as part of a team. Learners present investigations into technical factors as a presentation. Discussion and report based on constraints. Tutor feedback sessions.
<b>Assignment 2: Interactive Products</b> Investigate interactive media products with internet research/questionnaire/visiting practitioners covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• entertainment/education/information</li><li>• convergence/interaction/usability</li><li>• target market/style.</li></ul> Investigation into technical terms and critical vocabulary through independent research and a report. Produce sketchbooks/worksheets from investigations as part of a team. Team meetings. Tutor feedback sessions.

## Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

### Assignment 3: Using Digital Techniques and Technology

Proposal development.

Produce/import assets.

Produce product.

Tutor feedback sessions.

### Assignment 4: Reviewing Interactive Work

Prepare presentation.

Present product to peers/tutor with evaluation questionnaire.

Collate and evaluate based on focus group/client response.

Collation of sketches/worksheets/tutor feedback.

Evaluate the work of others.

Investigate own interactive media products/use.

Feedback investigations of own media product use to class.

Self-evaluation of performance.

Review/evaluation report or presentation of evidence.

## Assessment

To achieve a pass grade, learners will be expected to develop basic ideas and outcomes to meet interactive media briefs. Learners will select appropriate materials, techniques and processes in response to the requirements of the brief. They are expected to demonstrate a limited range of skills to achieve this criterion.

Assessment evidence could be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets and sample products, chosen to reflect the development of their ideas and skills. Evidence for P1 may well be integrated with evidence for P2, P3 and P4 which might be presented on worksheets or in sketchbooks as, for example, annotated visual analysis of interactive media products, the learner's own storyboards, and printouts of the range of digital processes they have covered.

Learners could also present evidence of processes and techniques digitally. Learners are required to use correct technical terms in describing and analysing interactive media products.

P2 and P4 could be evidenced through informal presentation and discussion of what the learner has achieved, this could be an audio/visual recording or witness statements and/or observation records. Guidance on the use of witness statements and observation records is given on our website ([qualifications.pearson.com](http://qualifications.pearson.com)).

For P4, learners should produce an interactive media outcome that meets the requirements of the brief. The range of ideas explored may be limited, and the outcome, though successful in fulfilling its purpose, may tend to lack the effectiveness or imaginative qualities of work assessed at the higher grades. Alternative ideas may be abandoned early, without any in-depth exploration.

For P5, learners will be able to explain their own interactive media outcome using appropriate terminology. There will be some analysis of the formal elements they have applied, and a basic knowledge of the effect these have had in enabling the brief to fulfil its requirements. There will be a limited ability shown to link analysis of their own outcomes with the research they have undertaken into the work of others. Evaluation of others' interactive media products will identify the strengths in the work, and will articulate ideas about the target audience and how the sites work. This evaluation will be at a basic level, without the depth of enquiry or effectiveness of the work in the higher grades. Any conclusions reached will be limited in scope.

To achieve M1, learners should be able to develop a range of effective ideas and outcomes in response to set interactive media briefs. There will be a sense of purpose in the response to the brief that clearly identifies their intentions and subsequent design responses.

Work produced at M2 would demonstrate an effective approach to exploring a diverse range of techniques, materials and processes. The design ideas will be effectively explored and developed through the application of the media.

For M3, learners are expected to evidence a range of annotated visual studies demonstrating the correct use of technical terms and critical vocabulary in their analysis of interactive media products. However, although set tasks may be similar for M3 as those for pass, learners at merit level would be expected to carry out an exploratory range of experimentation with interactive media techniques and technology appropriate to communicating their ideas. Evidence of their understanding and skilful use of digital techniques and technology might also be presented in learners' development work and outcome for M1.

For M4, learners will produce a final outcome that shows purpose in effectively meeting the requirements of the brief. There will be a higher level of sophistication present than in work assessed at P4, in both the development of ideas and in the application of formal elements.

For M5, learners will be able to explain their work clearly and coherently. They will show confidence in being able to articulate the journey their design and production work went through, and identify any weaknesses and strengths in both the process and the outcome. Learners' analysis and evaluation of the work of others will be conducted to reach coherent conclusions. Their evaluation will reference the relationship between the formal elements used and the intention or purpose of the products reviewed.

To achieve D1, learners are required to develop their ideas and outcomes imaginatively in response to given interactive media briefs by exploring a comprehensive range of alternative materials, techniques and processes. This could be evidenced through formal or informal presentations to the class or the tutor.

For D2, learners are expected to produce a comprehensive range of developmental studies and product samples. They will be able to demonstrate an independent approach to the manipulation of interactive media materials, techniques and processes.

For D3, learners should make in-depth studies of interactive media products using a comprehensive range of technical terms and be able to compare and contrast the varying visual/aural qualities, listed in the *Unit content*, of selected market products.

For D4, learners should demonstrate imagination and independence in their working, exploring a comprehensive range of techniques and processes. Evidence of their understanding and skilful use of digital techniques and technology might be presented in their development work and outcome for D1.

For D5, learners will show clarity of purpose when evaluating and explaining their own work. They will be able to describe how their outcome meets the requirements of the brief in a comprehensive manner. In reflecting on their work, learners will explain and demonstrate an awareness of why they did what they did, and will justify or support comments on these production decisions. Their use of technical and specialist language will be correct, being consistently appropriate and accurate. They will be able to explain the strengths and development in their work with insight. Learners will show an independent approach to producing informed and original conclusions. Their work will demonstrate a fluent understanding of how the work they have evaluated meets the requirements of the briefs within which they were developed.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2 M1, M2 D1, D2	<b>Assignment 1:</b> Investigating Interactive Media Processes	In a group learners will develop an idea for an interactive media product with appropriate planning documentation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Presentation of plans to peer group.</li><li>• Portfolio of ideas and planning paperwork documentation.</li></ul>
P3 M3 D3	<b>Assignment 2:</b> Interactive Products	Working as a group, learners evaluate four interactive media products covering content, ease of use, attractiveness and techniques used in their production.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Portfolio of evidence consisting of report</li><li>• Presentation.</li></ul>
P4 M4 D4	<b>Assignment 3:</b> Using Digital Techniques and Technology	Brief to produce an interactive media product based on idea development.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Portfolio of ideas/sketches.</li><li>• Related paperwork.</li><li>• Produce interactive media product.</li></ul>
P5 M5 D5	<b>Assignment 4:</b> Reviewing Interactive Work	Learner review and evaluation of their own and others' interactive media products.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Written report.</li><li>• Recorded interview.</li></ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Creative and Media Diploma: Record	Contextual References in Art and Design	Computers in Art and Design
	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	Image Manipulation Computer Applications
	Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs	Digital Storytelling
		Specialist Illustration Computer Applications
		2D Animation Production
		Sound in Interactive Media
		Interactive Media Authoring
		Interactive Media Practices
		Video Production for Interactive Media
		Principles of Software Design and Development

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCS Skills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process

- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work

#### Skillset, Animation

- ANIM 1 Work Effectively In Animation
- ANIM 2 Manage and Store Assets
- ANIM 8 Create Designs
- ANIM 9 Visualise The Script
- ANIM 10 Edit Timings
- ANIM 11 Create 2D Assets For Production
- ANIM 12 Create 2D Animation
- ANIM 13 Finalise Artwork for 2D Animation
- ANIM 14 Set Up 3D Elements For Animation
- ANIM 15 Create 3D Animation
- ANIM 16 Render 3D Animation
- ANIM 17 Build Characters (Models) for Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 18 Set Up Lighting and Cameras For Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 19 Create Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 21 Create Digital Visual Effects

#### Skillset, Design for the Moving Image

- DMI 1 Assist With The Technical Design Process
- DMI 3 Contribute To The Production Of Designs Using I.T.
- DMI 4 Assess The Technical Implications Of The Design Brief
- DMI 5 Allocate Drawing Requirements
- DMI 7 Create Models For Use In Productions
- DMI 30 Create Physical Artwork For Graphic Designs For The Moving Image
- DMI 31 Edit Graphic Sequences To Specification
- DMI 34 Produce Graphic Elements On Electronic Media
- DMI 36 Interpret Graphic Design Requirements

#### Skillset, Interactive Media and Computer Games

- IM1 Work Effectively in Interactive Media
- IM6 Use Authoring Tools to Create Interactive Media Products
- IM9 Provide Creative and Strategic Direction for Interactive Media Projects
- IM16 Plan Content for Web and Multimedia Products
- IM17 Architect Interactive Media Products
- IM20 Design Electronic Games

- IM24 Create 2D Animations for Interactive Media Products
- IM27 Create Sound Effects for Interactive Media Products
- IM28 Create Music for Interactive Media Products.

Skillset, Photo Imaging

- D1 Create Original Artwork for Digital Images
- D2 Carry out Specified Image Scanning
- D3 Plan and Produce Scanned Images
- D4 Carry out Specified Image Editing
- D5 Plan and Produce Edited Images
- D6 Prepare for, and Produce, Image Output
- D7 Contribute to the Effectiveness of Imaging Activities
- D8 Send and Receive Image Data Files by Digital Means
- D11 Edit Images Using a Digital Processing Station.

## Essential resources

This unit will involve the delivery of an art and design brief that allows learners sufficient opportunity to investigate and explore using interactive media techniques.

Learners will need access to specialist studios for image development and capture, depending on the types of project being developed and the available resources. Learners should be given suitable technical support to be able to gather and use appropriate peripherals. All aspects of health and safety should be covered by practical demonstrations led by tutors or technicians, for example the safe use of computers and related equipment. Access to suitable post-production facilities, computer labs and software is essential. A venue for screening or displaying final outcomes is desirable.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with interactive-based companies if possible. Skillset, the Sector Skills Council for the audio-visual industries has a substantial section for their website dedicated to interactive media [www.skillset.org/interactive](http://www.skillset.org/interactive). They give details about careers advice and industry information, plus regularly updated news and events pages on their careers web pages at [www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob](http://www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob).

Other relevant organisations and are:

- Computer Games Skills Forum
- Learning and Skills Councils National Development Agencies
- Skillset Apprenticeship Fund in Interactive Media.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects' for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Chapman N and Chapman J - *Digital Interactive Media* (John Wiley and Sons Ltd, 2004) ISBN 978-0470858905

Classroom in a Book - *Adobe Photoshop CS3 Classroom in a Book Adobe* (Adobe, 2007) ISBN 978-0321492029

Elsom-Cook M - *Principles of Interactive Media* (McGraw-Hill Publishing Co, 2001) ISBN 978-0077096106

Garrand T - *Writing for Multimedia and the Web: A Practical Guide to Content Development for Interactive Media* (Focal Press, 2006) ISBN 978-0240808222

Kerman P - *Sams' Teach Yourself Macromedia Flash MX 2004 in 24 Hours* (Sams, 2003) ISBN 978-0672325946

Microsoft Windows Programmer's Reference Library - *Windows Multimedia: Authoring Guide* (Microsoft Press, 1991) ISBN 1556153910

Muir N - *Microsoft Office PowerPoint* (Microsoft Press, 2007) ISBN 978-0735622951

Sengstack J - *Sams' Teach Yourself Adobe Premiere Pro in 24 Hours* (Sams, 2002) ISBN 978-0672326073

### Journals

*Journals from the Association of Computing*

*Machinery New Media Age*

### Websites

[www.actionscript.org](http://www.actionscript.org)

Resources for interactivemedia

[www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)

Website for Adobe software

[www.bima.co.uk](http://www.bima.co.uk)

British Interactive Media Association

[www.hyperstudio.com](http://www.hyperstudio.com)

Authoring tools for project-based learning

[www.nma.co.uk](http://www.nma.co.uk)

Website for New Media Age

[www.webstyleguide.com](http://www.webstyleguide.com)

Resources for website design

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	generating ideas and exploring possibilities for interactive media products
<b>Reflective learners</b>	reviewing and reflecting on their interactive media production work
<b>Team workers</b>	collaborating with others to produce an interactive media product if working in a group
<b>Self-managers</b>	organising time and resources and prioritising actions when producing their interactive media products, whether working on their own or in a group.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	planning and carrying out research into interactive media to develop an understanding of the techniques and technology involved carrying out research to develop ideas for their own interactive media products
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	trying out alternative ways of constructing their product following ideas through to complete the production of an interactive media product adapting ideas to changing circumstances
<b>Reflective learners</b>	setting goals to achieve successful criteria for their production work inviting feedback on their own work and dealing positively with praise, setback and criticism evaluating their experiences and learning to inform future progress
<b>Team workers</b>	if working in a group to produce an interactive media product taking responsibility for their own role managing discussions to reach agreements and achieve results
<b>Self-managers</b>	seeking out challenges or new responsibilities and showing flexibility when priorities change dealing with competing pressures, including personal and work related demands responding positively to change, seeking advice and support when needed.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	searching for information about interactive media techniques in order to develop ideas, using a range of sources including the internet, CD ROMs, databases
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	planning for the production of an interactive media product
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	creating and finding materials for an interactive media product and adapting them for use
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	exploring, extracting and assessing the relevance of information from interactive media products
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	using and importing text, numbers and images to explore and develop ideas for images using digital techniques
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	using text, numbers and images to produce a final digital image and information about their use of specialist techniques
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	communicating with other members of a production group

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	interpreting information from an instruction manual or textbook regarding the operation of a computer
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	using estimation and calculation to plan the layout of an interactive media product
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	using estimation and calculation to work out timings for audio visual material on an interactive media product
Use appropriate checking procedures and evaluate their effectiveness at each stage	
Interpret and communicate solutions to practical problems in familiar and unfamiliar routine contexts and situations	
Draw conclusions and provide mathematical justifications	
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	taking part in pair/group work analysing interactive media products attending production meetings
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	reading instruction manuals researching and summarising interactive media skills and techniques
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	recording details of specialist skills and techniques developed writing up minutes of production meetings.



# Unit 13: Working with Visual Arts Briefs

Unit code: A/502/4865

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

This unit aims to develop learners' abilities to research, explore and develop visual arts ideas from self-defined or given briefs. Learners will develop their research skills by using a wide variety of information and references that provide inspiration for originating and developing their ideas into 2D and 3D art, craft and design outcomes.

## ● Unit introduction

Artists, designers and craftspeople explore visual arts ideas, materials and techniques in response to self-defined or given briefs. In order to develop their own professional skills, artists work with different materials and experiment widely to explore the potential of a chosen medium and its suitability for the task. They also research widely from different sources to gain inspiration to help them develop ideas. Professionals continuously review the progress of their work to ensure it meets their creative intentions and the requirements of the brief.

In this unit learners will be working with visual arts briefs to research, explore and develop visual arts ideas. This will involve learners carrying out research from a range of primary and secondary sources appropriate to their brief. A valuable part of their research will be to learn what a contemporary visual arts professional does and the range of possible materials and techniques they employ to communicate their ideas most effectively. Learners will investigate historical and cultural visual arts to identify similar resources and constraints. Their research will inform learners' understanding of how to use visual arts materials and techniques to express their creative intentions. Learners will review their progress and refine the process of their work through ongoing and final analysis in response to the given briefs.

The visual arts cover a wide range of possible starting points including 2D and 3D art, craft and design. Briefs can therefore be varied to suit the needs and motivation of learners but should be set within a vocational context.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to research and record from primary and secondary sources in response to visual arts briefs
- 2 Be able to use visual arts materials, techniques and processes
- 3 Be able to develop ideas and outcomes to meet visual arts briefs
- 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of visual arts work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to research and record from primary and secondary sources in response to visual arts briefs

*Research:* primary sources eg observational drawing, painting, photography, video; subject matter eg objects, places, people, galleries, exhibitions, museums; secondary sources eg printed material, onscreen, publications, photographs, photocopies, postcards, libraries, audio-visual sources

*Recording:* materials eg graphite, charcoal, pen, ink, wash, oil pastels, chalks, hand-made tools, cameras; techniques; processes eg painting, drawing, montage, collage, photography, video, digital scanning, manipulation, printmaking, modelling, interview notes, recorded interviews with makers, annotation in sketchbooks, blogs; formal elements eg line, tone, form, colour, texture, pattern

*Visual arts briefs:* analysis; project requirements; constraints; research; focus; investigation; development; review; additional information required; development of work

### 2 Be able to use visual arts materials, techniques and processes

*Explore and use:* eg experimentation, testing, swatches, test pieces, maquettes, sketches, trial and error, handling, investigation, analysis

*Materials, techniques and processes:* materials eg graphite, charcoal, pen, ink, wash, oil pastels, chalks, hand made tools; techniques eg montage, collage, photography, digital scanning, manipulation, printmaking, modelling; processes eg commissioned work, personal exploration, abstraction, copying, scaling, collaborative work, site specific, limitations, objectives, traditional, new media; formal elements eg line, tone, form, colour, texture, pattern

*Health and safety:* workshop practice; risk assessment; COSHH health and safety guidance on materials; Health and Safety Act 1974

### 3 Be able to develop ideas and outcomes to meet visual arts briefs

*Plan and develop work:* plan eg analysis, project proposal, research, media and materials, alternative ideas, working drawings, develop eg review, evaluate, refine ideas; work eg mock-ups, storyboards, printouts, test pieces, maquettes; final work eg 2D, 3D, time-based, mixed media, new media

*Meeting a brief:* design methods eg planning, developing, producing final outcomes; success eg use of 2D/3D/time-based, impact, use of formal elements, visual language qualities, constraints, opportunities; others' work

#### 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of visual arts work

*Discuss:* eg annotated worksheets, sketchbooks; recordings of discussions; explanations eg descriptions, comments, evaluations, tutorials, spoken word, video, face to face, individual, group crit; technical and art terms eg art, craft, design processes, qualities

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg image purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, props, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, technical qualities, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*Visual arts work:* own work; others' work eg peers, professionals

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> research and record from primary and secondary sources in response to visual arts briefs [IE]	<b>M1</b> conduct competent research and record appropriate visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to visual arts briefs	<b>D1</b> independently research and record diverse visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to visual arts briefs
<b>P2</b> use materials, techniques and processes safely [IE; CT; SM]	<b>M2</b> explore materials, equipment and techniques effectively	<b>D2</b> explore diverse materials, equipment and techniques imaginatively and independently
<b>P3</b> develop appropriate ideas and outcomes to meet visual arts briefs [SM; CT; RL]	<b>M3</b> develop coherent ideas and outcomes to meet visual arts briefs	<b>D3</b> develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet visual arts briefs
<b>P4</b> discuss successful visual arts work. [RL EP]	<b>M4</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D4</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit explores working to visual arts briefs. Learners will need to be able to research, explore and develop visual arts ideas from self-defined or given briefs. This will involve learners carrying out research from a range of primary and secondary sources appropriate to their brief. Tutors should ensure that learners have access to exciting visual sources for first-hand study. Learners should be encouraged to produce a range of primary source studies experimenting with different viewpoints and approaches to the use of media and materials as well as developing their skills in manipulating the formal elements. A valuable part of their research will be to learn what a contemporary visual arts professional does and the range of possible materials and techniques they employ to communicate their ideas most effectively. Learners will also investigate historical and cultural visual arts to explore similar resources and constraints. Learners' wide-ranging research will inform their understanding of how to use visual arts materials and techniques to express their creative intentions. Learners will review the progress and refine the process of their work through ongoing and final analysis in response to the given briefs.

Tutors should design briefs that are appropriate to this level, motivate the learner and reflect current commercial and professional practice. Connecting with local business, industry or institutions to design 'live' scenarios for briefs will give learners relevant vocational experience as well as providing opportunities for group work. Depending on the choice of specialist units, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as graphic design, 3D design crafts or photography. The skills and understanding that learners develop in the visual arts will give learners the opportunity to improve their performance across the criteria for all their other units.

Learners will need to be advised of, and adhere to, all aspects of current legislation associated with health and safety practices in the studio or workplace. Learners should follow appropriate COSHH guidance.

The majority of learners' work will be carried out in a studio/workshop environment focusing on practical activities (for example drawing, painting, media experimentation, model making, printing, photography, video) depending on the learner's chosen area of research. Tutors will need to provide practical demonstrations in manipulating the formal elements, exploring media and techniques in experimental ways. Learners will need to have access to a range of 2D, 3D and time-based media, materials, techniques and processes to realise their ideas and respond to briefs. Part of their self-assessment will be to review their use of materials, techniques and processes and to discuss and comment on the different properties and characteristics of the media employed. They should also learn to critically evaluate the quality of their achievement, documenting their opinions on what worked well or not and why, in response to their brief.

Learners should be encouraged to keep all evidence of their studies in working sketchbooks and/or work sheets and design ideas sheets where, through annotated sketches, storyboards, thumbnails and roughs, they can record the development of their ideas, the effects and results of their experimentation with materials and techniques and how their skills might be improved. They will also evidence their experiments through working models, maquettes, samples, swatches and test pieces. Regular feedback should be given to learners through day-to-day discussion and formal and informal interim assessment.

Learning outcomes 1, 2 and 3 can be integrated through practical studio experiences. Learning outcome 4 is an opportunity for learners to reflect on their work while drawing parallels with the work of others. For learning outcome 4, learners will need to be taught how to record, analyse, modify and refine ideas for their work and working processes. When reviewing outcomes learners need to take into account what the successes were and what the failures were, and why. They will need to consider and document the development of their ideas, use of media and quality of final outcomes. When making modifications learners need to refine and clarify their intentions and working practices. These modifications need to be documented and the final outcome recorded using drawings, photographs, maquettes or video depending on the type or scale of work. Learners will need to be taught how to present their work to suit the finished piece and the intended audience. Presentation skills should be developed and can include the use of IT, for example onscreen presentations, photographing work, scanning sketchbook pages into Photoshop to produce design sheets, or using colour photocopies to enhance the quality of presentation sheets. Learners need to understand the importance of presentation techniques; they should consider the intended setting for the outcome.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
<p>Introduction to the unit exploring the aims and requirements of the unit.</p> <p>Analysis of the visual arts brief: explore surfaces in the environment and develop ideas for paintings, prints and sculptures.</p>
<p><b>Assignment 1: 'Surfaces' Theme</b></p> <p>Selecting and recording from objects with exciting surface detail such as eroded, corroded, dilapidated, worn, cracked, burnt, fissured etc through direct observation.</p> <p>Identifying and using the formal elements of recording using a range of materials, techniques, processes.</p> <p>Induction into awareness of health and safety issues in the use of workshop materials.</p> <p>Assessing in groups and getting feedback on own progress.</p>
<p><b>Assignment 2: Research into relevant contemporary and historical visual arts and crafts</b></p> <p>Gallery visits/selecting images appropriate to the brief and commenting on the work.</p>

## Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

### Assignment 3: Developing a Personal Outcome

#### Recording and generating ideas:

- using 2D and 3D media and techniques in recording from a range of selected sources
- originating ideas using selected recordings
- using selected contextual images to inform and inspire the work
- independently planning and developing work to meet the brief and clarifying project proposal and intentions
- tutorials/reviews.

Independently developing, reviewing and refining ideas.

Interim evaluation and presentation of design sheets.

#### Producing final outcomes to meet the brief:

- using feedback and modifying final ideas
- creating mock-ups, maquettes, samples, roughs
- finishing outcomes
- tutorials
- evaluating work.

## Assessment

For P1, learners should produce evidence which shows basic use of different methods of recording information from research sources, such as through primary source studies, notes and sketches, annotated internet images and text, photographs, postcards, leaflets/posters. Learners might evidence their research through sketchbooks, worksheets, notebooks, digital storage systems and through visual and verbal presentations. Witness statements and observation record sheets might be used to evidence learners' understanding and ability to self-evaluate. Learners will demonstrate limited skills in manipulating the formal elements and a basic visual language understanding in recording from their sources.

For P2, learners should produce evidence of using a variety of 2D or 3D materials ranging from pencil/paints and non-resistant materials to software programmes and resistant materials. Depending on the area of investigation, learners should show evidence of evaluating their use of hand tools, techniques and processes; this could be in the form of annotated roughs, storyboards, photographs, sketches and explanatory notes. Learners will evidence a limited range of studies and samples that have been chosen to demonstrate their appropriate selection and use of visual arts materials, and techniques basically and safely, in response to the requirements of the brief. They are expected to use a limited range of skills to achieve this criterion. Assessment evidence might be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, trials, test pieces, maquettes and sample products, chosen to reflect the development of their ideas and skills in handling visual arts materials.

For P3, learners will explore and develop appropriate ideas to meet visual arts briefs. Learners will show limited planning and a basic ability to follow the different stages of the project. This evidence might take the form of a limited range of sketchbook thumbnail studies, plans or working drawings, ideas worksheets or contact sheets, samples, swatches, tests and/or maquettes. The project outcome will vary according to ideas and the learner's chosen area. Evidence for learners' final outcomes will depend on their chosen area of visual arts, but at pass level they will meet the requirements of the project brief using a limited range of appropriate working methods and processes.

For P4, learners will draw on their work for P1, P2 and P3. Where necessary, learners should produce evidence of health and safety awareness. This could be included in their written annotations or recorded discussions. Evidence of discussions for P4 might take the form of basic handwritten annotations alongside work or taped recordings of their evaluations. This might also include basically annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with limited notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a limited range of materials and techniques. This evidence might also be produced through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records. Learners will need to reflect on others' work that follows similar themes, subject matter or uses similar processes or materials. Visits to galleries and exhibitions and especially visits from practitioners will give learners opportunities to examine others' working processes in detail.

For M1, learners must show evidence that they have researched and recorded primary and secondary resources effectively and shown competent use of different methods to record/collect information, such as the internet, photographs, postcards, leaflets/posters, notes and sketches. For M2, learners should produce evidence of using a range of 2D or 3D materials and, depending on the area of investigation, learners should show evidence of using effective use of appropriate hand tools, techniques and processes and a range of studies and samples that have been chosen to demonstrate their appropriate selection and competent use of visual arts materials and techniques. Assessment evidence might be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, trials, test pieces, maquettes and sample products, chosen to reflect the range of development of their ideas and competent skills in handling visual arts materials.

For M3, learners will competently explore and develop a wide range of appropriate ideas to meet visual arts briefs effectively. They should show effective planning and competent ability to follow the different stages of the project. This evidence might take the form of a range of sketchbook thumbnail studies, plans or working drawings, ideas worksheets or contact sheets, samples, swatches, tests and/or maquettes. The project outcome will vary according to ideas and the learner's chosen area and at merit level will effectively meet the requirements of the project using a range of appropriate working methods and processes.

For M4, evidence of discussions might take the form of tutorial feedback notes on learners' interim evaluation and review. Learners will present evidence of competently annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and development of ideas, together with effective notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a range of materials and techniques. This evidence might also be demonstrated through recorded formal and informal presentations and discussions using witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, learners will demonstrate a coherent approach to collecting information independently using different research methods. They will show consistently confident evidence of skill in manipulating the formal elements and well-developed visual language understanding in working imaginatively from their sources.

For D2, learners should produce evidence of using a diverse range of 2D or 3D materials. Depending on the area of investigation, learners should evidence a wide range of creative studies and samples that show confident use of visual arts materials and techniques. These will be done imaginatively and safely, in response to the requirements of the brief. Assessment evidence might be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, trials, test pieces, maquettes and sample products, chosen to reflect the development of their ideas and skills in handling visual arts materials.

For D3, learners will confidently explore and develop appropriate ideas creatively and imaginatively to meet visual arts briefs showing independent planning and creative ability to develop the project. This evidence might take the form of a wide range of sketchbook thumbnail studies, plans or working drawings, ideas worksheets or contact sheets, samples, swatches, tests and/or maquettes. The project outcome will vary according to ideas and the learner's chosen area. Evidence for learners' final outcomes at distinction level will confidently meet the requirements of the project using a wide range of appropriate working methods and processes imaginatively and safely.

For D4, evidence of discussions might include learners' informed annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a wide range of materials and techniques, linked to insights on others' similar work. This evidence might also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 1:</b> 'Surfaces' Theme	Visual artist exploring a theme to fulfil a commission.	Assessment methods might include:  1 Using witness statements to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>observe and record learner activity and their progress while working</li> </ul>
P1 M1 D1	<b>Assignment 2:</b> Research	Visual artist conducting research towards the commission above.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>record learners' discussions with groups and ability to communicate at tutorials</li> <li>observe and record learner presentations</li> </ul>
P2, P3, P4 M2, M3, M4 D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 3:</b> Developing a Personal Outcome	Visual artist produces outcomes for the commission.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reports of progress from work experience placements</li> <li>Learner's own ongoing review of progress and self-evaluation evidenced through statements, notes and annotated sketchbooks/worksheets</li> <li>Evidence of visual studies from portfolio of ongoing and final work.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore Drawing	Contextual References in Art and Design	Visual Recording in Art and Design
Explore Painting	2D Visual Communication	Materials, Techniques and Processes in Art and Design
Explore 3D Fine Art	3D Visual Communication	
	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work.

## Essential resources

- *specialist workspaces*: eg studios, workshops, computer suites, video and film editing suites
- *materials, equipment and tools*: eg for 2D, 3D, time-based and associated materials, equipment and tools across all specialist areas
- *access to a learning centre*: eg for books, periodicals, journals, videos, CD ROMs, the internet
- *specialist staff*: eg for the different specialist pathways; this might necessarily include technical support staff.

Visits to galleries, exhibitions, film reviews, plays, performance and live art, workshops, studios and advertising agencies could play an important role when designing assignments for this unit. Alternatively, bringing in professional practitioners, from art, design or media backgrounds, to talk about their work could help learners with the evidence requirements for this unit.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with local business, industry and practising artists, craftspeople and designers to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Assignments should be vocationally relevant and centres should work with outside agencies to offer 'live' assignments to learners or to provide work experience.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme and for work experience and employment.

Learners should be regularly informed and updated on progression routes to further education and of job opportunities on completion of their course.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

- Adamson G - *Thinking through Craft* (Berg Publishers, 2007) ISBN 9781845206475
- Blakesley R P - *The Arts and Crafts Movement* (Phaidon Press Ltd, 2006) ISBN 9780714838496
- Blossfeldt K - *Natural Art Forms* (Dover Publications, 1998) ISBN 9780486400037
- Browning M - *Creative Collage: Making Memories in Mixed Media* (Sterling, 2008) ISBN 9781402735097
- Colchester C - *The New Textiles* (Thames & Hudson Ltd, 1993) ISBN 9780500277379
- Dabner D - *Graphic Design School: The Principles and Practices of Graphic Design* (Thames & Hudson Ltd, October 2004) ISBN 9780500285268
- Freeman M - *The Photographer's Eye: Composition and Design for Better Digital Photos* (Ilex, June 2005) ISBN 9780240809342
- Gair A - *Collin's Complete Artist's Manual* (Collins, 1999) ISBN 9780004133638
- Goldsmith S and Scott J - *Textile Perspectives in Mixed-media Sculpture* (Crowood Press Ltd, 2003) ISBN 9781861265784
- Honour Hand Fleming JF - *The Visual Arts: A History, Revised Edition* (Prentice Hall, 2009) ISBN 9780205665358
- Kenny M and Bairstow J - *Design Modelling: Visualising Ideas in 2D and 3D* (Hodder and Stoughton Ltd, April 2000) ISBN 9780340663394
- Khan S - *Creating with Paint* (Martingale and Co, 2001) ISBN 9781564773203
- Langford M J - *Langford's Basic Photography* (Focal Press, 2007) ISBN 9780240520353
- McIntire P - *Visual Design for the Modern Web* (New Riders Publishing, 2007) ISBN 9780321515384
- Murray I - *The Penguin Dictionary of Art and Artists* (Penguin Books Ltd, August 1997) ISBN 9780140513004
- Newell J and Whittington D - *Monoprinting* (Printmaking Handbook) (A&C Black, 2006) ISBN 9780713667462
- Noyce R - *Printmaking at The Edge* (A&C Black Publishers Ltd, April 2006) ISBN 9780713667844
- Sammiguel D - *Complete guide to materials and techniques for drawing and painting* (Barrons Educational Series, 2008) ISBN 9780764161117
- Steven Hand Pettit E - *Graphic Design Timeline* (Allworth Press, 2000) ISBN 9781581150643
- Udale J - *Basics Fashion Design: Textiles and Fashion* (AVA Publishing, 2008) ISBN 9782940373642
- Williams N - *Paperwork* (Phaidon Press Inc, 1995) ISBN 9780714834610
- Yates M - *Textiles: A Handbook for Designers* (W W Norton and Company, 1996) ISBN 9780393730036

## **Journals**

*Art*

*Monthly*

*Art*

*Review*

*Artists and Illustrators*

*British Journal of*

*Photography*

*Contemporary Crafts*

*magazine Creative Review*

*Dazed and*

*Confused Design*

*Week*

*Interior Design*

## **Websites**

[www.allgraphicdesign.com](http://www.allgraphicdesign.com)

[www.artjournal.co.uk](http://www.artjournal.co.uk)

[www.craftscouncil.org.uk](http://www.craftscouncil.org.uk)

[www.creativehandbook.co.uk](http://www.creativehandbook.co.uk)

[www.design-council.org.uk](http://www.design-council.org.uk)

[www.designmuseum.org](http://www.designmuseum.org)

[www.fashion-era.com/C20th\\_costume\\_history](http://www.fashion-era.com/C20th_costume_history)

[www.masters-of-photography.com](http://www.masters-of-photography.com)

[www.tate.org.uk](http://www.tate.org.uk)

[www.vam.ac.uk](http://www.vam.ac.uk)

Graphic design resources

An online guide to art books and exhibitions

The national development agency for contemporary crafts in the UK

Resources for photographers, illustrators and designers

The national strategic body for design

The Design Museum website

Fashion website with illustrations of fashion, costume, clothing and social history

Articles, images and resources on photographers

The Tate Gallery website

The website for the Victoria and Albert Museum

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	conducting research and recording visual and other information from primary and secondary sources exploring materials, equipment and techniques safely planning and developing appropriate ideas and producing a final outcome that meets the requirements of the project, using working methods and processes engaging in a discussion of own experimental and developmental final creative work
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	conducting research and recording visual and other information from primary and secondary sources exploring materials, equipment and techniques safely planning and developing appropriate ideas and produce a final outcome that meets the requirements of the project, using appropriate working methods and processes
<b>Reflective learners</b>	exploring materials, equipment and techniques safely engaging in a discussion of own experimental and developmental final creative work
<b>Team workers</b>	conducting research and recording visual and other information from primary and secondary sources
<b>Self-managers</b>	conducting research and recording visual and other information from primary and secondary sources planning and developing appropriate ideas and producing a final outcome that meets the requirements of the project, using appropriate working methods and processes
<b>Effective participators</b>	conducting research and recording visual and other information from primary and secondary sources engaging in a discussion of own experimental and developmental final creative work.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	researching source material and visually recording developing ideas, using materials reviewing their progress and planning presentations.
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	researching sources and visually recording planning and developing ideas experimenting with media and processes
<b>Reflective learners</b>	reviewing progress through discussions presenting work at different stages of development final evaluation of the brief
<b>Team workers</b>	working with groups to research and develop project ideas planning and mounting displays of group work and final exhibition
<b>Self-managers</b>	planning time management for tasks to meet the brief organising research material and collating own work keeping records of project developments including work experience planning presentation of work at different stages of the course
<b>Effective participators</b>	participating in group discussions - project launch, group reviews and crit sessions; group activities and visits.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching secondary sources for recording purposes researching contextual references for analysis of others' images and for use to inform own work scanning images to develop design ideas
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	planning project briefs and where and how ICT might be used when appropriate evaluating outcomes
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	researching from internet sources; downloading information; creating folders for storage and retrieval
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	undergoing induction period - introduction to the ICT centre and systems and working practices
Troubleshoot	
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	researching internet sources for a range of contextual material and from different sites, selecting from their research, developing own response informed by research
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	researching information for different briefs and activities; selecting, collating and word processing when commenting evaluating use of digital media
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	designing digitally; using scanners; inputting and formatting information from sources; use of software programmes for image development
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	collating research from different contextual sources together with own written work using design software and developing layered imagery possibly including text
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	creating a digital folders for different tasks of project exploring appropriate presentation techniques digitally
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	assessing their progress and commenting on the appropriateness of their selection of ICT tools and facilities - eg commenting on appropriate use of software programmes
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	using internet to email or access artists' blogs; email to submit written work; downloading information from internet sources; storage of information - creating folders for access and making lists of websites used

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	discussing the project brief; contributing to group discussions and the sharing of ideas; listening to lectures and project launch/ demonstrations; comparing visual qualities in selected contextual references in others' work; evaluating own studies; presenting to different audiences at various stages of the project
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	researching, reading, selecting text and images; annotating, commenting and comparing; using text and image to relate to own work and evidencing understanding through discussion, evaluations and presentations
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	evaluating results of own ideas and analysing qualities in the use of formal elements and media, materials and techniques - using annotations or notes and extended written evaluations  analysing and evaluating selected artists' images for the purpose of developing own work, using personal judgements; evaluating final ideas - using notes, comment and extended pieces of writing.



# Unit 14: Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs

Unit code: F/502/4866

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

This unit explores working in 3D design crafts, a broad area that can cover furniture, jewellery and accessories, mixed media, automata, metalwork, woodwork, glass, plastics and ceramics. Learners will need to be able to research, explore and develop ideas to make 3D design craft, using either self-negotiated or given briefs.

## ● Unit introduction

Design craftworkers employ a process of designing and making objects which can be decorative or functional. Designing and making skills are combined to produce considered and developed items. In many cases successful creative practitioners will be skilled in more than one material and may combine materials in their work. Learners should explore a range of materials and techniques to provide sufficient evidence for assessment.

Learners will carry out research from a range of primary and secondary sources appropriate to their brief. A valuable part of their research will be to learn what a contemporary professional craftworker does and the range of possible materials and techniques they employ to communicate their ideas effectively. Learners will explore historical and cultural 3D design crafts to underpin their research and development of ideas. Wide-ranging research will inspire learners to be innovative and creative in their approach to designing and making. Visits to galleries, museums and workshops, and from visiting lecturers will help broaden learners' understanding of the breadth of design crafts. Investigation into the contemporary craft scene, both in the UK and internationally will give learners an insight into the current vocational context of design crafts and its importance to the economy.

Learners will be encouraged to explore the crossover of form and function and to analyse their design ideas for fitness for purpose. Learners should be encouraged to combine materials in order to develop a range of skills. Research skills will be contextualised through the design process and learners will have the opportunity to develop evaluative skills through analysis of their design throughout the process.

This unit can be linked with other units in order to develop a broad range of transferable and relevant skills.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to research and record primary and secondary sources in response to 3D design crafts briefs
- 2 Be able to explore and develop ideas to meet 3D design crafts briefs
- 3 Be able to use 3D design crafts materials, techniques and processes
- 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of 3D design crafts work.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to research and record primary and secondary sources in response to 3D design crafts briefs

*Research:* primary research eg drawings, sketches, taking photographs; secondary research eg photocopies, collecting ready-made resources

*Recording:* materials eg graphite, charcoal, pen, ink, wash, oil pastels, chalks, hand made tools, cameras; techniques; processes eg painting, drawing, montage, collage, photography, video, digital scanning, manipulation, printmaking, modelling, interview notes, recorded interviews with makers, annotation in sketchbooks; formal elements eg line, tone, form, colour, texture, pattern

*Sources:* primary eg first-hand observation drawings, own photographs, studios, museums, galleries, exhibitions, poetry, music; secondary eg images, clippings, websites, photographs, journals, photocopies, postcards, leaflets, books, magazines, blogs, CD ROMs

## 2 Be able to explore and develop ideas to meet 3D design crafts briefs

*Explore and develop ideas:* eg use research material, inform ideas, others' work, idea generation, experimenting, testing, planning, reviewing, refining, design process; formal elements; visual language; creating; communicating; design ideas; recording; presenting findings; appropriate formats eg drawings, notes, samples, sketchbooks, design sheets; annotate; design ideas; fitness for purpose; viability of designs; constraints; opportunities

*Design crafts briefs:* artefact eg jewellery, furniture, accessory, automata, ceramics, metalwork, woodwork, glass, plastics, one-off, set; technical factors eg type, properties, characteristics, materials, costs, scale of production, time, performance, fit; specialist markets eg retailers, craft fairs, studio potters, tourism, locations, heritage, collectors, demographics, nostalgia, anniversaries, commemoration, events, concerts, mementos

## 3 Be able to use 3D design crafts materials, techniques and processes

*3D materials:* non-resistant materials eg plaster, clay, card, paper, balsa wood, string, wire, mod roc, papier mache, felt, fabrics; resistant materials eg metal, wood, MDF, ply, chipboard, perspex, glass, found objects

*3D techniques and processes:* making eg cutting, carving, construction, joining, bonding, fusing, drilling, stitching, weaving, forming, moulding, finishing

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment; following the appropriate COSHH guidance on materials and techniques

#### 4 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of 3D design crafts work

*Discuss:* eg annotated worksheets, sketchbooks; recordings of discussions; explanations; descriptions; comments; evaluations; tutorials; spoken word, video, face to face, individual, group crit; eg technical and art terms eg art, craft, design processes, qualities

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg image purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, props, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content); presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, technical qualities, sustainability, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work; tutors; client; documentation eg notes, minutes of meetings, notes from feedback, production diaries

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> research and record primary and secondary sources in response to 3D design crafts briefs [IE; CT]	<b>M1</b> conduct effective research and record appropriate visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to 3D design crafts briefs	<b>D1</b> independently research and record diverse visual and other information from primary and secondary sources in response to 3D design crafts briefs
<b>P2</b> develop ideas and outcomes to meet 3D design crafts briefs [CT; SM]	<b>M2</b> develop coherent ideas and outcomes to meet 3D design crafts briefs	<b>D2</b> develop imaginative ideas and outcomes to meet 3D design crafts briefs
<b>P3</b> use 3D design crafts materials, techniques and processes safely [CT]	<b>M3</b> explore materials, equipment and techniques effectively	<b>D3</b> explore diverse materials, equipment and techniques imaginatively and independently
<b>P4</b> discuss successful 3D design crafts work. [RL]	<b>M4</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D4</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit provides the learners with the opportunity to work in any area of 3D design crafts such as ceramics, jewellery, sculpture, textiles, glass, etc (the learner may work in one or several areas of 3D design crafts, for example ceramics, or ceramics and glass). The current climate for contemporary craft is lively and exciting and learners should be encouraged to explore current practice and look at the work of contemporary practitioners to support their research.

Learners should be encouraged to investigate the creative use of media and materials within a craft context. The range of media, materials, techniques and technology that the learners explore should enable them to investigate an area of personal preference. The breadth of experience will depend on the centre's resources.

Learners should be taught:

- how to research and collect information
- the specialist techniques and processes required for the different craft areas
- how to use and look after specialist tools and equipment correctly - health and safety
- how to develop ideas into a resolved final outcome.

This unit has been designed to provide an opportunity for learners to undertake focused projects in the specialist area of 3D design crafts. The briefs should have a clear starting point, a period of experimentation and development, resolution and evaluation. Typically this would be through briefs that reflect current commercial and professional practice. Depending on the choice of specialist materials, briefs could combine work in different specialist areas such as furniture, jewellery and accessories.

Learners will need to be advised of, and adhere to, all aspects of current legislation associated with health and safety practices in the studio or workplace. Learners should follow appropriate COSHH guidance.

Learners need to be able to choose suitable material, techniques and processes to realise their ideas and respond to briefs. They should be encouraged to explore non-traditional media and to combine different materials and techniques to develop their ideas. Their 3D experimental work should be evidenced through trials, samples, test pieces and maquettes. Work produced can be functional or decorative.

Learners should continuously evaluate their progress through reviewing the materials, techniques and processes they use; discussing and commenting on the properties and characteristics of the media employed. They should also learn to critically evaluate the quality of their achievement, documenting their opinions on what worked well or not and why, in response to their brief. Strong evaluation skills and an understanding into how they have learnt will help these learners to progress from a Level 2 learner into a Level 3 learner.

Learners should be encouraged to keep all evidence of their studies in working sketchbooks, where they might record the development of their ideas, the effects and results of their experimentation with materials and techniques and how their skills might be improved. Regular feedback should be given to learners through day-to-day discussion and formal and informal interim assessment.

Learning outcomes 1, 2 and 3 can be integrated through practical studio experiences.

Learning outcome 4 should be integrated with learning outcomes 1, 2 and 3, through an ongoing review, evaluation and documentation of learners' exploratory studio work rather than just at the end. For learning outcome 1, learners will need to be encouraged to explore and investigate primary and secondary sources. They will need to be guided on their selection of sources in relation to the brief and to develop their recording skills, manipulating the formal elements to communicate observed qualities of forms. Learners will need to develop their skill and control in handling media for the purpose of recording from their selected sources. Although selection of materials, techniques and technology for the process of recording will depend on the individual centre's available resources, it is expected that learners have access to as broad a range as possible.

For learning outcome 2, learners need to be taught how to explore and develop ideas. They should learn to use the relevant research material to develop and create designs. Initially this outcome is likely to be delivered through discussion about potential ideas and demonstration, perhaps launching the brief through an inspiring presentation of slides/images. Tutors should encourage learners' participation in analysing the brief through asking probing questions and developing learners' creative ability in generating exciting, innovative ideas. Delivery techniques should be varied and stimulating, encouraging learners to investigate the creative use of techniques and technology within a design crafts context. Group activities would be beneficial at this level, with learners discussing and developing ideas around a set brief, looking at possible options for individual investigation. An inspiring visit or workshop from a recent arts graduate or established artist can also add validity to the learning experience. Learners may have quite different areas of personal preference they would like to investigate and they will need opportunities to experiment with approaches and methods individually, then meet to share the results. Learners should plan and follow the stages of the design process and understand how formal elements and design principles can be used to create design ideas. They should produce a range of designs that show experimentation with materials and the formal elements and design principles.

Their findings should be recorded and presented in an appropriate format (for example drawings, notes, samples, design sheets etc); these can then be developed into 3D designs. Learners should be taught how to keep a balance between aesthetics and function, ensuring both elements are met. As well as their own exploratory work, off-site visits to workshops or contemporary exhibitions would motivate learners and provide a vocational context.

Learning outcome 3 should be delivered as an integrated part of both learning outcomes 1 and 2. For learning outcome 3, learners should be introduced to specialist products, techniques and processes and the development of their specialist skills, knowledge and understanding (see *Content* and *Essential resources*), relevant to their sources and ideas for their 3D design crafts brief. Investigating 3D craft practitioners will enable learners to gain insight into how professionals work in 3D design crafts, what media they use and the techniques they employ, as well as helping them decide on the vocational direction in which they wish to go. The best way of doing this would be by visiting practitioners' studios.

For learning outcome 4, learners will need to be taught how to record, analyse, modify and refine ideas for their work and working processes. Learning outcome 4 is an opportunity for learners to reflect on their work while drawing parallels with the work of others. When reviewing outcomes learners need to take into account what the successes were, what the failures were, and why. They will need to consider and document the development of their ideas, the use of media and quality of final outcomes. If the learner has produced a working prototype then, as part of the evaluation, it is possible to carry out practical tests, this should allow a clear and objective assessment of the outcome. When making modifications learners need to refine and clarify their intentions and working practices. These modifications need to be documented and the final outcome recorded using drawings, photographs, maquettes or video depending on the type or scale of work. Learners will need to be taught how to present their work to suit the finished piece and the environment that it is to be shown in. Presentation skills should be developed and can include the use of IT, for example, onscreen presentation, scanning sketchbook pages into *Photoshop* to produce design sheets, or using colour photocopies to enhance the quality of presentation sheets. Learners need to understand the importance of presentation techniques; they should consider the environment for the outcome, the construction and proportions of plinths or fixings and health and safety as well as fitness for purpose of the final outcome.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
<p><b>Assignment 1: A Memory Box.</b> To design and make a memory box based on the work of Joseph Cornell. Using a range of found objects and employing making skills in a range of media and materials. (Wood, balsa, paper, card, fabric, found objects.)</p> <p>Information gathering - visits, sketching, photographing, internet research, gathering images, artists research on Joseph Cornell.</p> <p>Independent learner design development - gather imagery for memory box, expand ideas, material sampling, planning, thumbnails, relates designs to research.</p> <p>Refine ideas, materials exploration, update design sheets and sketchbooks.</p> <p>Produce outcomes using personal imagery and 3D pieces to convey meaning.</p> <p>Present ideas and evaluate outcomes.</p>
<p><b>Assignment 2: Accessory Design:</b> Making accessories using traditional and non-traditional materials. Can be for a client or situation, to convey meaning or for a client who would not normally wear an accessory. Work produced could be for a sale or exhibition. (Felt, fabrics, paper, wire, card, plastics.)</p> <p>Research contemporary designer makers who use a range of materials in their work, gallery visit, studio visit, visiting lecturer.</p> <p>Independently develop ideas, skills workshops eg feltmaking, paper manipulation, sewing techniques with traditional and non-traditional materials, produce sketches, design sheets, sketchbook work, target audience, example costings.</p> <p>Refine ideas, choose and make final piece(s) take photographs of work.</p> <p>Evaluate ideas and outcomes, is the piece fit for purpose and well made.</p>

### Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

**Assignment 3: Automata:** To design and make a piece of work that has at least one moving part and is made from either a range of materials or found objects, ie recycled metals and fabric. The finished item could be sculptural, functional, a toy or an item of jewellery.

Look at contemporary artists who use automata in their work.

Visiting lecturer, exhibition visit, studio visit, talk.

Material workshops and exploration, found objects, fabric, metals, recycled items, plastics, recycled materials workshop.

Independent design development, refine ideas, include findings from research and sampling to show how ideas have developed.

Refine and produce final piece.

Present ideas and evaluate strengths and weaknesses.

## Assessment

For P1, learners must show evidence that they have researched and recorded from a basic range of primary and secondary resources in response to the brief. A basic range might comprise observational drawing or photographs from an off-site visit and secondary might be internet and magazine research on contemporary makers from a short list given by the tutor.

Learners will demonstrate limited skills in manipulating the formal elements and a basic visual language understanding in recording from their sources. This would be using line and tone, colour and shape to record information and communicate ideas. The work may be tentative rather than confident in approach and may have little detail and independent exploration.

For P2, learners will explore and develop a limited range of ideas to meet 3D design crafts briefs. This would be evidence that the learner had generated several ideas and worked them through in a sketchbook or on a design sheet annotating what materials might be used and the scale of the work. Evidence for P2 might take the form of sketchbook thumbnail studies, ideas worksheets or 3D tests and maquettes.

Evidence for P3 could be integrated successfully with P1 and P2. For P3, learners' evidence should include a limited range of studies and samples that have been chosen to demonstrate their appropriate selection and use of 3D design craft materials, and techniques in response to the requirements of the brief. They are expected to use a limited range of skills to meet this criterion. Assessment evidence could be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, trials, test pieces, maquettes and sample products, chosen to reflect the development of their ideas and skills in handling 3D design craft materials. The finish should have been considered but making skills may not be highly developed at this level.

Evidence for P4 could be integrated with the evidence for P1, P2 and P3. The evidence for P4 might take the form of learners' annotated sketches and studies for initial recording and ideas together with limited notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of materials and techniques. Learners will need to reflect on others' work that follows similar themes, subject matter or uses similar processes or materials. Visits to galleries, exhibitions and especially visits from practitioners will give opportunities examine others' working processes in detail.

Annotation may be descriptive rather than detailed and evaluative. This evidence might also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

Photographing work as it develops is useful to show the making and development of the project; to develop evaluative skills and confidence a writing frame can be used, giving the learner headings to consider on a regular basis.

For M1, learners must show evidence that they have effectively researched and recorded from a range of primary and secondary resources in response to the brief. They will demonstrate more assured skills in manipulating the formal elements and an effective visual language understanding in recording from their sources.

For M2, learners will explore and develop a range of ideas effectively to meet 3D design crafts briefs with an awareness of safe working practices.

Evidence for M2 might take the form of sketchbook thumbnail studies, ideas worksheets or 3D tests and maquettes. Learners would have generated several workable ideas in a range of media and investigated combining materials.

Evidence for M3 could be integrated successfully with M1 and M2. For M3, learners' evidence should include a range of studies and samples that have been chosen to demonstrate their appropriate selection and competent use of alternative 3D design craft materials, and techniques in response to the requirements of the brief. They are expected to use an effective range of skills to achieve this criterion, pieces should be considered and finished. Assessment evidence could be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, trials, test pieces, maquettes and sample products, chosen to reflect the development of their ideas and skills in handling 3D design craft materials. Although set tasks may be similar as those for pass level, for learners at this level, tutors would additionally expect learners to carry out creative experimentation appropriate to communicating their ideas.

Evidence for M4 could be integrated with the evidence for M1, M2 and M3. The evidence for M4 could take the form of learners' effectively annotated sketches and studies for initial recording and ideas, together with competent notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in the use of materials and techniques. Learners will need to draw comparisons with the work of others. This evidence could also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, learners must show evidence that they have independently researched and recorded from a diverse range of primary and secondary resources in response to the brief. They will demonstrate confident skills in manipulating the formal elements and extensive visual language understanding in recording from their sources.

For D2, learners will explore and develop a wide range of ideas imaginatively and creatively to meet 3D design crafts briefs with an awareness of safe working practices. Evidence for D2 might take the form of sketchbook thumbnail studies, ideas worksheets and 3D tests and maquettes showing the range and depth of development for this level.

Evidence for D3 could be successfully integrated with D1 and D2. For D3, learners' evidence should include a diverse range of creative studies and samples that have been chosen to demonstrate their appropriate selection and confident use of alternative 3D design craft materials, and techniques imaginatively and safely, in response to the requirements of the brief. They are expected to use a wide range of skills independently to achieve this criterion. Assessment evidence might be taken from learners' sketchbooks, worksheets, trials, test pieces, 3D design craft materials. Tutors would additionally expect learners to carry out a wide range of creative experimentation appropriate to communicating their ideas. It would be expected that learners' would produce a wide range of developmental studies and product samples demonstrating their skilful and imaginative manipulation of materials, techniques and processes. For D2 and D3, learners would be expected to show creativity and independence in their working, using a broad range of techniques and processes as available.

Evidence for D4 might be integrated with the evidence for D1, D2 and D3. This evidence for D4 could take the form of learners' confidently annotated sketches and studies for initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth written analysis on the quality of their ongoing achievement in the use of materials and techniques, linked to insights on others' similar work. This evidence could also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 1:</b> A Memory Box	Craftworker creates a new product.	Formative including discussion, critiques, feedback for learning, one-to-one reviews, peer assessment. Summative including panel review, presentation, exhibition, show. Evidence: sketchbooks research, design sheets, samples, finished piece, evaluation.
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 2:</b> Accessory Design	Designer creates accessory, linked to artefacts in an exhibition.	Formative including discussion, critiques, feedback for learning, one-to-one reviews, peer assessment. Summative including panel review, presentation, exhibition, show. Evidence: sketchbooks research, design sheets, samples, finished piece, evaluation.
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 3:</b> Automata	Designer makes a craft work with moving parts for an animated story.	Formative including discussion, critiques, feedback for learning, one-to-one reviews, peer assessment. Summative including panel review, presentation, exhibition, show. Evidence: sketchbooks research, design sheets, samples, finished piece, evaluation.

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore 3D Design Crafts	Contextual References in Art and Design	Materials, Techniques and Processes in Art and Design
	2D Visual Communication	Communication through Art and Design
	3D Visual Communication	

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work.

## Essential resources

This unit can be delivered in a classroom as long as there is adequate access to a range of specialist techniques and materials. Learners will need access to appropriate specialist learning areas. Learners will also need storage for their outcomes as they develop during this unit. Assessment should be ongoing through the unit so that learners are given feedback to help them develop their outcomes and improve their skills. Assessment evidence on completion of this unit should include sketchbooks, design sheets, material samples, annotation and evaluation and final pieces which are clearly linked to research and design development.

Adequate resources, work and storage space should be provided for the learners to explore a range of the materials and techniques identified in this unit. For materials the learners need to work with a variety of fabrics, yarns, threads, clay, wood, light metals etc. The techniques and processes will be those associated with the choice of materials.

*For clay:* techniques such as hand building, modelling, throwing, press-moulding, slip casting and decorating. Whole processes such as preparing clay, hand-building, throwing and glazing.

*For textiles:* techniques such as embroidering, felting, weaving, knitting, printing, dying. Whole processes such as preparation of fabrics, pressing, creating a loom, applying decoration, creating items from textiles, finishing.

*For wood:* techniques such as cutting, preparing, joining, construction, piecing, turning, shaping and finishing, laminating. Whole processes such as selecting the type of wood most suitable for the intended purpose, making a cutting list, planning, cutting, shaping, joining, sanding, sanding and finishing.

*For light metals:* techniques such as cutting, preparing, joining, constructing, piecing, filing, turning, shaping, braising, soldiering, beating, polishing, applying surface decoration and textures.

Whole processes such as measuring and marking out, cutting out the basic shape, forming, annealing, joining to other forms, applying surface decoration, such as enamelling or soldering, cleaning, polishing and finishing.

*For plastics:* techniques such as cutting, line bending, forming and moulding, joining, laminating, constructing, piecing, shaping and finishing. Whole processes such as planning, measuring and marking out, cutting, drilling, creating and finishing. The tools and equipment that will be required will be those associated with the materials, techniques and processes applied.

*For clay:* clay tools, wheels, slip trailers, brushes, kilns etc.

*For textiles:* scissors, needles, tape measures, looms, sewing machines etc.

*For wood:* saws, planes, drills, chisels, carving tools, hammers, screwdrivers, sanding machines etc.

*For light metals and plastics:* saws, snips, files, drills, soldering irons, hammers, vices, pliers, power drills, vacuum former etc.

Learners will need access to information on historical and contemporary professional practice in a design craft context. They will also need library and internet access, visits to galleries, museums, exhibitions and working studios.

## **Employer engagement and vocational contexts**

Opportunities could be developed through this unit, to work with a client to produce work for an exhibition or for a new build under the '1% for Art' scheme. Assignments may include production of trophies or prizes for a real or simulated live assignment, production of work for sale or as part of an enterprise or fund-raising project. Small group working could be used to work on a mural for a client or in a collaboration with a client. Putting this unit in a vocational context means giving learners the opportunity to meet practitioners and to see them at work in their studios or talking about their work at a selling event or exhibition.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Grey M - *Paper, Metal and Stitch* (Batsford Ltd, 2007) ISBN 978-0713490671

Lefteri C - *Materials for Inspirational Design* (RotoVision, 2006) ISBN 978-2940361502

Parnes T - *Jewelry and Accessories from Everyday Objects* (Creative Publishing International, 2007) ISBN 978-1589233270

Pipes A - *Drawing for Designers* (Laurence King Publishing, 2007) ISBN 978-1856695336

Polster B - *The A-Z of Modern Design* (Merrell Publishers Ltd, 2006) ISBN 978-1858943305

Searle T - *Easy Felted Accessories* (Search Press Ltd, 2006) ISBN 978-1844481736

Searle T - *Fabric Jewellery: 25 Designs to Make Using Silk, Ribbon, Buttons and Beads* (A&C Black, 2003) ISBN 978-0713686432

### Journals

*A-n Artist*

*newsletter*

*Ceramic Review*

*Craft (published by the Crafts*

*Council) Selvedge magazine*

### Websites

[www.artscouncil.org.uk](http://www.artscouncil.org.uk)

The national development agency for the arts in the UK

[www.craftscouncil.org.uk](http://www.craftscouncil.org.uk)

The national development agency for contemporary crafts in the UK

[www.designnation.co.uk](http://www.designnation.co.uk)

Resources for design, craftwork, textiles and fashion

[www.the-artists.org](http://www.the-artists.org)

Resources on contemporary arts and artists

[www.thedesigntrust.co.uk](http://www.thedesigntrust.co.uk)

Resources for designers

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	identifying people and areas to research planning and carrying out research to support their project analysing and evaluating the information found, making annotations in sketchbook, making choices about what to use justifying why their design ideas have changed exploring the needs of the end user or client constraints
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	generating ideas and possibilities asking questions about research or new techniques and materials connecting their own and others' ideas and experiences in inventive ways trying out alternatives, following designs through adapting ideas as circumstances change
<b>Reflective learners</b>	self-assessing, peer assessing, identifying opportunities and achievements setting goals with success criteria to develop own work reviewing own progress and following targets dealing with feedback and praise, responding positively to critiques evaluating own learning, use feedback for learning communicating in different ways for different audiences
<b>Team workers</b>	collaborating with others - either on research, critiques or in design teams providing constructive support and feedback to others in peer reviews
<b>Self-managers</b>	seeking out challenges or new responsibilities and show flexibility when priorities change working towards goals showing initiative, commitment and perseverance organising time and resources, prioritise actions anticipating, take and manage risks (in design work) responding positively to change as ideas develop managing own emotions and building and maintaining relationships during the project
<b>Effective participators</b>	discussing issues of concern, seeking resolution when needed proposing practical ways forward, breaking these into manageable steps.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>using primary and secondary sources to initiate research</li> <li>planning and carrying out research to support their project</li> <li>analysing and evaluating the information found</li> <li>demonstrating their thought process through annotations in sketchbook, making choices about what to use and what information is not relevant</li> <li>justifying why their design ideas have changed in their sketchbooks</li> <li>exploring the needs of the end user or client constraints such as materials to use, purpose and scale</li> </ul>
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>generating initial ideas and possibilities</li> <li>asking questions about research or new techniques and materials</li> <li>connecting their own and others' ideas and experiences in inventive ways</li> <li>trying out alternatives, following designs through</li> <li>adapting ideas as circumstances change and problem solving</li> </ul>
<b>Reflective learners</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>self-assessing, peer assessing, identifying opportunities and achievements</li> <li>setting goals with success criteria to develop own work</li> <li>reviewing own progress and following targets</li> <li>dealing with feedback and praise, responding positively to critiques</li> <li>evaluate own learning, using feedback for learning</li> <li>communicating learning in different ways for different audiences</li> </ul>
<b>Team workers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>collaborating with others, either on research, critiques or in design teams</li> <li>providing constructive support and feedback to others in peer reviews</li> </ul>
<b>Self-managers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>seeking out challenges or new responsibilities and show flexibility when priorities change</li> <li>working towards goals showing initiative, commitment and perseverance</li> <li>organising time and resources, prioritising actions</li> <li>anticipating, taking and managing risks (in design work)</li> <li>responding positively to change as ideas develop</li> <li>managing own emotions and building and maintaining relationships during the project</li> </ul>
<b>Effective participators</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>discussing issues of concern, seeking resolution when needed</li> <li>proposing practical ways forward, breaking these into manageable steps.</li> </ul>

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	using the internet or online journals for research. Selecting appropriate sources
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	completing action plans and schedules using ICT
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	using memory sticks and MP3 to store project work, research or evaluation
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	working safely following guidelines for rest and sitting positions. Adhering to school/college guidelines on internet use.
Troubleshoot	understanding how to resolve simple issues within work, know when to ask for help
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	making choices about information to be used, reword, rewrite rather than print off information for research
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	making notes of websites visited and acknowledge sources and authors.



# Unit 15: Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs

Unit code: L/502/4868

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

This unit introduces learners to working with digital technologies in art and design briefs. Learners will explore the possibilities of different digital technologies and processes and learn about the formulation, planning and production of digital art and design.

## ● Unit introduction

Digital art and design encompasses different areas; artists use digital-based processes to produce digital fine art work, sometimes using photographic processes, installation and digitally manipulated imagery amongst others. Digital technologies are also harnessed to produce animated or time-based work. Illustrators can work with digital imagery, or any combination of traditional processes and digital-based production. Digital art and design offers exciting new opportunities to create new forms of work and to involve, interact and collaborate with audiences and participants.

Digital art and design briefs can also feature work that is closely related to the graphic communication or new media industries. From digital artists working independently or through digital communities, to companies exploring alternative methods through which to communicate a corporate identity, there is a wealth of outlets for digital art and design.

Learners will be taught how to select appropriate source materials, according to the intention of the brief. They will learn how to identify and use the necessary software, techniques, processes, equipment and peripherals to achieve the intended outcome. Learners will experience aspects of producing digital art and design, such as file management, file storage protocols, communication technologies, pre-production and production methods. They will review their outcomes against the original purpose or scope of the projects they work on.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to create visual material using digital technology
- 2 Be able to plan and develop ideas for a digital art and design brief
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of digital art and design work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to create visual material using digital technology

*Visual material:* screen-based eg jpegs, 3D, projections, movies, animations, sequences, prints, websites, galleries; artefacts eg 3D files

*Digital technology:* eg using digital photography, scanning, vector based graphics software, animation software, editing software; recording eg sources, capture, downloads, imagery; use file saving conventions eg back-up digital files, transfer digital files using peripherals, importing and exporting digital files

*Health and safety:* Health and Safety Act 1974; elimination of risk to self and others; thinking and working safely within a studio environment; following the appropriate COSHH guidance on materials and techniques

### 2 Be able to plan and develop ideas for a digital art and design brief

*Plan and develop ideas:* primary sources eg direct observational drawing, painting, photography, video; secondary sources eg drawings, paintings, pictures, photocopies, postcards, paper-based and online publications, libraries and audio-visual sources; subject matter eg objects, places, people, galleries, exhibitions, museums; planning eg storyboards, layouts, working drawings, pre-production, production, post-production, deadlines, reviews, alternative ideas, drafts, sketches, emails, attachments, blogs, websites, animatics; communicating eg audiences, clients, colleagues, collaborators

*Explore and use:* eg experimentation, testing, test pieces, models, sketches, trial and error, handling, investigation, analysis

*Materials, techniques and processes:* materials eg traditional art and design materials, digital technology, hardware, software; techniques eg image manipulation, cloning, sampling, experimentation, interactive media, onscreen, site-specific; processes eg 2D, 3D, time-based

*Outcomes:* eg initial ideas, preliminary work, drawings, photographs, scanned imagery, found imagery, outline plan for production, identifying equipment, peripherals and software required for production

### 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of digital art and design

*Development of own and others' work:* compared with original intentions; technical qualities; aesthetic qualities; impact; opportunities; limitations

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options, exploring properties, effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Production process:* technical competencies; creative abilities; time management

*Sources of information:* self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, collaborators, tutors, client; documentation eg notes, recordings, notes from feedback, production diaries

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> create visual material using digital technology safely [CT]	<b>M1</b> create effective and coherent visual material using digital technologies	<b>D1</b> independently and imaginatively, create visual material using an assortment of digital technologies
<b>P2</b> plan and develop ideas and outcomes for a digital art and design project [CT; SM]	<b>M2</b> purposefully present coherent ideas for a digital art and design project	<b>D2</b> independently present imaginative idea for a digital art and design project
<b>P3</b> select materials, techniques and processes for a digital art and design brief [IE; CT]	<b>M3</b> select materials, techniques and processes, using them effectively for a digital art and design brief	<b>D3</b> integrate diverse materials, techniques and processes, using creatively and independently for a digital art and design brief
<b>P4</b> discuss successful digital art and design work. [CT]	<b>M4</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D4</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit can be delivered through a single art and design digital project, provided the assignment is broken down into suitable stages where learners can be given interim assessment and feedback. Assignment 1: The Digital Art and Design Brief in the outline learning plan shows a possible structure for delivery where learners are given an interim assessment at the end of stage 1. This interim assessment is based on a review of their ideas for the brief. This relates specifically to learning outcome 1, where learners begin the unit by developing their responses to the set brief. Learners may wish to work to a self-generated brief, and tutors should support this provided they are sure that it can fulfil the requirements of the unit. It may be possible to incorporate a client- or employer-led live project. For example, a company or organisation local to the centre may have a need for a digitally produced, marketing-related outcome. Such an opportunity should be supported by tutors and may make a vocationally relevant and interesting assignment. It is particularly rewarding for learners to experience working with a client as well as their tutors, as this experience gives them opportunities to develop communication and presentation skills.

Learning outcomes 1 and 2 require learners to identify their ideas and source materials, and incorporate them into a proposal for the brief. Tutors should refer learners to the scope and constraints of the brief at regular intervals at this stage, to ensure that learners' ideas and responses are fit for purpose and address the requirements of the brief.

Learners will require tutor and technical support in order to create visual materials using relevant digital-based technologies. The choice of production methods should be clearly linked to the scope of the assignment and the intended outcome. Learners should be taught how to use peripherals correctly, and to use aspects such as file-saving and file-naming protocols, as they will need to present the different stages of their assignment in an ordered format for assessment. Much of this material may be in digital formats; therefore learners should carefully name and save each file in an appropriate folder for retrieval at a later date. Learners should also consider the final format for their outcome, ie a DVD with supporting digital files; QuickTime movie or series of final JPEG files. If using short animated sequences, learners should present all preliminary work and their production file at assessment; this could include a synopsis, initial drawings, storyboards, animatics if available and final sequence. Learners should consider the effectiveness of this assignment in relation to the constraints of the brief; they might ask how well did they meet the brief? What did the client/tutor/peer feedback tell them? How could they have improved their project? This evaluation should be recorded in their work journal or sketchbook, and included as part of their submission on the unit.

Learning outcome 3 is an opportunity for learners to reflect on their work while drawing parallels with the work of others. Through visiting professionals and/or through contacting others through email or blogs, learners gain a better understanding of the working processes of others. Learners will need to be taught how to record, analyse, modify and refine ideas for their work and working processes. When reviewing work in progress, learners need to take into account any technical or aesthetic problems. They will need to consider and document the development of their ideas, use of media and quality of final outcomes. If the learner has produced a working prototype then, as part of the evaluation, it will be possible to carry out practical tests and this should allow a clear and objective assessment of the outcome. When making modifications learners need to refine and clarify their intentions and working practices. These modifications need to be documented and the final outcome saved and backed up in an appropriate format. Learners will need to be taught how to present their work to suit the brief and the intended audience.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
<b>Assignment 1:</b> The Digital Art and Design Brief. Read through and group discussion.
Individual tutorial/action planning.
<b>Stage 1</b> - learners develop ideas for project/pre-production <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• outline subject matter for project</li><li>• identify sources</li><li>• undertake any required research</li><li>• independently develop ideas for project</li><li>• present ideas for project.</li></ul>
<b>Stage 2</b> - learners use digital technologies <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• identify equipment required for production</li><li>• identify hardware/software required</li><li>• use digital equipment safely</li><li>• capture and store digital imagery correctly.</li></ul>
<b>Stage 3</b> - learners complete project/post-production <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• independently undertake required editing/animation/digital production methods</li><li>• render animation/burn discs/DVDs as required</li><li>• export project for general viewing ie QuickTime</li><li>• present all files, paperwork and production file for assessment.</li></ul>
Reviewing work.

## Assessment

Assessment for this unit be staged in order to provide an interim assessment for learning outcomes 1 and 2, and to ensure that learners are supported through the assessment process to achieve their full potential in the project. By providing feedback on the suitability of their ideas and proposal, tutors will be able to direct learners in enhancing and refining their project. The assessment of learning outcome 1 can take the form of a presentation, supported by relevant preliminary work and research notes. This method is particularly beneficial if the unit is being delivered through a live project situation similar to the scenario in Assignment 1. Post-interim assessment, learners may need to return to activities detailed through learning outcomes 1 and 2 in order to develop their ideas further, and as a result of feedback. This will necessitate the final grade for these outcomes being determined at the final assessment.

For P1, learners will have addressed the art and design brief in a clear and controlled manner. Presentation of ideas for P2 will tend to be simplistic and not particularly developed. Although answering the brief in an appropriate way, learners' work will lack the purpose and imagination of that presented in the higher grades.

Work assessed at P3 will show the development of ideas that use digital technologies in a basic way. Hardware, software and peripherals will have been used competently to produce a basic set of visual materials.

For P4, learners will offer a basic understanding of how their own work and work of others is successful.

Work produced at M1 will have tackled the requirements of the brief through learners selecting source material with purpose. This will be linked to their proposal.

Work assessed at M2 will have presented a clear and coherent proposal for the brief that meets the requirement in a positive manner. Ideas presented will be coherent and clearly link the choice of visuals to the intended message or purpose of the brief.

For M3, learners will use digital technologies effectively, and their application will be applied to the brief with purpose. Work assessed will combine the different elements of the project into an effective outcome that communicates the intentions of the brief beyond the obvious.

For M4, learners will offer a more reflective comparison of the development of their own work and draw parallels with the work of others.

For D1, learners will have sourced a range of visual material that shows an innovative approach to tackling the brief.

Ideas presented for D2 will show will have met the requirements of the brief in an imaginative manner. The message or purpose of the brief will have been addressed through using ideas that have been fully developed, and avoid the obvious or pedestrian.

For D3, learners will use digital technologies with skill and independence; they will not consistently rely on tutor input to the same degree as learners whose work has been assessed at the lower grades. They may combine digital technologies imaginatively to produce exciting results.

For D4, learners will be able to bring together the various elements of their assignment to produce a sophisticated art and design outcome that fully meets the brief in an exciting and original way. This will also offer an insightful evaluation of how their own work, related to others' work of a similar nature.

## Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2, M3, M4 D1, D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 1: The Digital Art and Design Brief</b>	A local council has commissioned a designer to produce a series of leaflets and advertisements that highlight the council's commitment to increasing public participation in household waste recycling. The council also wants the designer to develop a character figure as part of the campaign that can gain the attention and interest of younger members of the family.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• work journals, containing notes and initial ideas</li><li>• learners' preliminary work</li><li>• learners' presentation of ideas for project</li><li>• learners' use of digital technologies in sourcing, capturing, manipulating and outputting digital files</li><li>• tutor observation of studio practice</li><li>• learners' practical work and final outcomes</li><li>• learners' review of own and others' working practices and outcomes</li><li>• presentation at close of assignment to include pre-production, production and post-production stages as required.</li></ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	Digital Image Capture and Editing
	Working with Photography Briefs	Image Manipulation Computer Applications
	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	Digital Storytelling
	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	Producing Video Installation Work

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work

Skillset, Animation

- ANIM 1 Work Effectively In Animation
- ANIM 2 Manage and Store Assets
- ANIM 8 Create Designs
- ANIM 9 Visualise The Script
- ANIM 10 Edit Timings
- ANIM 11 Create 2D Assets For Production
- ANIM 12 Create 2D Animation
- ANIM 13 Finalise Artwork for 2D Animation
- ANIM 14 Set Up 3D Elements For Animation
- ANIM 15 Create 3D Animation
- ANIM 16 Render 3D Animation
- ANIM 17 Build Characters (Models) for Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 18 Set Up Lighting and Cameras For Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 19 Create Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 21 Create Digital Visual Effects

### Skillset, Design for the Moving Image

- DMI 1 Assist With The Technical Design Process
- DMI 3 Contribute To The Production Of Designs Using I.T.
- DMI 4 Assess The Technical Implications Of The Design Brief
- DMI 5 Allocate Drawing Requirements
- DMI 7 Create Models For Use In Productions
- DMI 30 Create Physical Artwork For Graphic Designs For The Moving Image
- DMI 31 Edit Graphic Sequences To Specification
- DMI 34 Produce Graphic Elements On Electronic Media
- DMI 36 Interpret Graphic Design Requirements

### Skillset, Interactive Media and Computer Games

- IM1 Work Effectively in Interactive Media
- IM6 Use Authoring Tools to Create Interactive Media Products
- IM9 Provide Creative and Strategic Direction for Interactive Media Projects
- IM16 Plan Content for Web and Multimedia Products
- IM17 Architect Interactive Media Products
- IM20 Design Electronic Games
- IM24 Create 2D Animations for Interactive Media Products
- IM27 Create Sound Effects for Interactive Media Products
- IM28 Create Music for Interactive Media Products.

### Skillset, Photo Imaging

- D1 Create Original Artwork for Digital Images
- D2 Carry out Specified Image Scanning
- D3 Plan and Produce Scanned Images
- D4 Carry out Specified Image Editing
- D5 Plan and Produce Edited Images
- D6 Prepare for, and Produce, Image Output
- D7 Contribute to the Effectiveness of Imaging Activities
- D8 Send and Receive Image Data Files by Digital Means
- D11 Edit Images Using a Digital Processing Station.

## Essential resources

This unit will involve the delivery of an art and design brief that allows learners sufficient opportunity to investigate and explore using digital art and design techniques.

Learners will need access to specialist studios for image development and capture, depending on the types of project being developed and the available resources. Learners should be given suitable technical support to be able to gather and use appropriate peripherals. All aspects of health and safety should be covered by practical demonstrations led by tutors or technicians, for example the safe operation of portable lighting. Access to suitable post-production facilities, computer labs and software is essential. A venue for screening/installing or displaying final outcomes is desirable.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

This unit may be delivered through a live project. Centres should aim to develop links with appropriate local organisations willing to support a project such as the digital art and design brief shown in the outline learning plan.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme and for work experience and employment.

Learners should be regularly informed and updated on progression routes to further education and of job opportunities on completion of their course. Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Berger J - *100 Habits of Successful Graphic Designers: Insider Secrets from Top Designers on Working Smart and Staying Creative* (Rockport Publishers Inc, 2005) ISBN 978-1592531882

Blais J and Ippoloto J - *At the Edge of Art* (Thames & Hudson, 2006) ISBN 978-0500238226

Caplin S and Banks A - *The Complete Guide to Digital Illustration* (Ilex, 2003) ISBN 978-

1904705000 Davies A and Fennessey P - *Digital Imaging for Photographers* (Focal Press, 1998) ISBN 978-0240515908 Kerlow I - *The Art of 3D Animation and Effects* (John Wiley, 2004) ISBN 978-0470084908

Klanten R - *Hidden Track: How Visual Culture is Going Places* (Die Gestalten Verlag, 2005) ISBN 978-3899550849

Klanten R - *Illusive: Contemporary Illustration and its Context* (Die Gestalten Verlag, 2006) ISBN 978-3899552508

Zeegan L - *Digital Illustration: A Masterclass in Digital Image-Making* (RotoVision, 2007) ISBN 978-2940361564

## Journals

*British Journal of*

*Photography Computer*

*Art magazine Creative*

*Review*

*Design magazine*

## Websites

[www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)

[www.clickforart.com](http://www.clickforart.com)

[www.computerarts.co.uk](http://www.computerarts.co.uk)

[creativecommons.org](http://creativecommons.org)

[www.dafont.com](http://www.dafont.com)

[www.design-council.org.uk](http://www.design-council.org.uk)

[www.digitmag.co.uk](http://www.digitmag.co.uk)

[www.filmeducation.org](http://www.filmeducation.org)

[www.flickr.com](http://www.flickr.com)

[www.northkingdom.com](http://www.northkingdom.com)

[www.otherthings.com/grafarc/about.html](http://www.otherthings.com/grafarc/about.html)

[www.photojojo.com/content/tutorials/  
ultimate-guide-to-time-lapse-photography](http://www.photojojo.com/content/tutorials/ultimate-guide-to-time-lapse-photography)

[www.saatchi-gallery.co.uk](http://www.saatchi-gallery.co.uk)

[www.tate.org.uk](http://www.tate.org.uk)

[www.zoomr.com/photos](http://www.zoomr.com/photos)

Art and design software

Paintings and prints commercial site

Computer Arts magazine website

Creative Commons website, dedicated to online sharing  
and collaboration of resources

Online fonts

The national strategic body for design

Online digital arts

Resources for film in education

Photo sharing website

Design agency showcase

Graffiti archaeology

Time lapse photography website

The Saatchi Gallery online

The Tate Gallery website

Video and photo sharing website

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	developing alternative approaches to using source material and presenting ideas adapting ideas in response to results of digital art and design media exploration working with digital technologies in the production process producing the final outcome and ensuring it meets the brief
<b>Self-managers</b>	gathering appropriate source materials managing the pre-production, production and post-production processes.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	collecting information about the scope of the art and design brief collating research materials
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	reviewing ideas and refining these ideas through practical application
<b>Reflective learners</b>	making links between own work and that of others
<b>Team workers</b>	working with clients (if applicable) working in small production teams (if applicable).

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	selecting processes for their brief
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	reviewing their own and others' work
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	saving and organising their work
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	exploring digital processes
Troubleshoot	creating digital art and design
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	sourcing digital files and information from online tutorials
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	sourcing information from websites and electronic publications about digital art and design
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	creating digital art and design
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	producing outcomes
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	presenting digital files at assessment
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	discussing how own work meets the brief
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	using processes safely

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	sourcing and reading information about digital art and design reading and absorbing information about health and safety relating to peripherals/equipment to be used
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	gathering and recording relevant technical information about equipment compiling information from reviews or client presentations.

# Unit 16: Working with Accessory Briefs

Unit code: J/502/4870

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is to give learners the opportunity to design and make fashion accessories. Learners will be able to develop design process skills. They will understand how to use specialist materials and processes in producing prototypes for bags, millinery, body adornments or other accessories.

## ● Unit introduction

Accessories can transform a fashion outfit and can be a simple way to obtain a unique look or adopt the latest trend. This unit gives learners the opportunity to design and make fashion accessories. The unit explores the various stages in the design process for fashion accessories and learners will develop design skills. They will understand how to use specialist materials and technical processes in producing prototypes for bags, millinery, body adornments and other accessories.

Learners will understand the creative process by following a brief that requires them to generate, develop and review their ideas through to presenting a completed prototype. Learners will explore how mood boards and market research can help design ideas to evolve. They will have the opportunity to develop designs based on their own research. Learners will gain an awareness of different types and methods of accessory construction and be able to make paper patterns and maquettes that can be reviewed and altered as necessary for different design and construction styles. They will learn about the suitability of materials and methods of hand and machine stitching to achieve their aims. Learners will use appropriate machinery and hand tools to achieve prototype standards and they will be aware of health and safety issues associated with the equipment and materials that they use. Learners should follow and understand appropriate risk assessments. Relevant COSHH guidance should be followed at all times.

Learners are expected to plan and develop their skills in the production process. They will develop an understanding of the sequence of operation used during the prototype construction, paying particular attention to time management.

Learners are encouraged to look at a variety of accessories to help develop their ideas. Assignment briefs should be designed to be stimulating and motivating to encourage learners to develop and acquire new skills.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to develop ideas to meet accessory briefs
- 2 Be able to produce outcomes to meet accessory briefs
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of accessory briefs work.

# Unit content

---

## 1 Be able to develop ideas to meet accessory briefs

*Clarify brief:* eg identify purpose, identify constraints, budget, eco issues, evaluate client needs

*Research:* eg work of others, historical, contemporary

*Develop ideas:* primary sources eg natural world, made objects, architecture, the human figure, art galleries, museums; secondary sources eg photography, books, postcards, the internet; 2D media; 3D media; alternative ideas; problem solving; analysis; recording; refining

*Maquettes:* mock ups eg scale, full-size; materials eg card, paper, Vilene, scrap materials

*Accessory:* eg millinery, footwear, clutch bags, handbags, shoulder bags, shopping bags, belts, gloves, muffs, scarves, jewellery, body adornment

## 2 Be able to produce outcomes to meet accessory briefs

*Planning:* eg sequence, operations, making process; identifying making techniques; identifying (suitable fabrics, threads, fasteners, trims)

*Equipment:* eg millinery gauzes, hoods, hat blocks, fabrics, plastics, metals, waste materials, old or broken jewellery, papers, card, yarn, wire, beads, trimmings, pattern making papers, felt making equipment, shoe lasts; hand tools eg scissors, cutting wheels, measures, pins, needles, jewellery-making equipment

*Machinery:* sewing machines eg lockstitch, over lockers, heavy duty machines for stitching leather or plastics, embroidery machines, pressing and steaming equipment, industrial steam irons, hat block steamers

*Health and safety:* correct use according to manufacturers' guidelines; relevant legislation; risk assessments

*Production process:* (according to the accessory) preparation; construction techniques; decorative details; finishing techniques; final presentation

## 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of accessory briefs work

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, access, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Quality:* eg comparison, original intentions, aesthetic qualities, technical qualities, strengths, weaknesses, areas for improvement; own work; others' work

*Production process:* technical competencies; creative abilities; time management; costings

*Sources of information:* self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, tutors, client; documentation eg notes, minutes of meetings, notes from feedback, production diaries, visits

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> research and develop designs for accessories [IE; CT]	<b>M1</b> create an accessory which realises design intentions and shows competence in application of technical skills	<b>D1</b> create an accessory that demonstrates a high standard of practical competence, and independent working
<b>P2</b> make maquettes to meet design requirements [SM; RL]	<b>M2</b> compare how own and others' work meets the demands of a brief.	<b>D2</b> evaluate perceptively how own and others' work meets the demands of a brief.
<b>P3</b> use appropriate processes to assemble, produce and present an accessory [CT; SM]		
<b>P4</b> safely operate appropriate equipment and machinery [SM]		
<b>P5</b> discuss successful accessory briefs work. [RL]		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

Since the production process varies according to the accessory to be produced, it is anticipated that the learner will be given guidance at the start of the unit, acquiring understanding and skills as the unit develops. Then working independently and demonstrating safe practice once the skills have been acquired. Centres can focus accessory making on the facilities available to them.

This unit builds on the visual communication skills gained in *Unit 2: 2D Visual Communication* and *Unit 3: 3D Visual Communication*.

For learning outcome 1 learners should research and explore a variety of accessories to broaden their understanding, and knowledge of this specialist area. They should be introduced to production techniques and processes as appropriate to their specialist pathway. Learners are encouraged to look at new technologies available within the accessory production and manufacturing processes. Learners are also encouraged to be experimental in their ideas and building of prototypes during the design development process.

Learners should produce maquettes from paper, card or other materials, although they do not all have to be followed through to a completed item. Learners should also be encouraged to make up samples of parts of accessories where skill can be demonstrated in using, for example, difficult materials and/or techniques.

For learning outcome 2, learners should use appropriate processes to assemble and present an accessory. Learners should be given guidance on minimal waste of materials and the overall cost effectiveness of the process before putting these skills into practice themselves. Learners should safely operate appropriate equipment and machinery. Learners are required to complete and record quality checks throughout the making process in order to develop their skills and understanding of the planning and evaluation of finished accessories.

For learning outcome 3, learners will need to gain an understanding of quality processes and success criteria by examining their own and others' work. Visits by accessory designers and makers will help learners to gain an insight into working methods. Learners should be given regular feedback through day-to-day discussion and formal and informal assessment. Through examining working processes and outcomes, they will gain a better understanding of the constraints and opportunities available to them, as they produce their own work.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities/assessment
Introduction to unit <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>aim</li><li>requirements re research, taught technical skills, individual planning and outcomes</li><li>introduction to research in a gallery.</li></ul>
Introduction to safe use of tools and materials.
Group and individual activities to explore understanding and research a range of contemporary accessories and materials.
<b>Assignment 1: Making an Accessory for a Celebrity</b>
Introduction.
Group visit to galleries and museums for historical research.
Individual development of ideas in response to brief.
Experimentation with design development and production of patterns and maquettes.
Review maquettes and develop designs.
Safely use and select appropriate tools and machinery to carry out the making process Learner initiated making.
Discussion on quality improvements to group.
Present and evaluate finished accessory and production process by individual.
Group critique.

## Assessment

Work at pass level will show a response to the brief that produces appropriate ideas and design work. Learners will be able to explain their intentions clearly. Their choice of materials and techniques will demonstrate understanding of potential as applied to the brief. The range of materials and techniques considered will be limited and frequently tutor led.

For P1, learners will be able to research ideas in response to an accessories brief. They will demonstrate basic understanding of the constraints in the brief. Learners will develop the research to meet the requirements of the brief. The range of ideas developed will be limited but suitable for the intended purpose of the brief.

For P2, learners will make simple maquettes to support their ideas. The maquettes will be of a basic construction but sufficient to demonstrate ideas.

For P3, learners will select appropriate making techniques and suitable materials for making an accessory. They will demonstrate basic understanding when considering the options available to them. Materials chosen will be entirely appropriate to the task, and they will be able to communicate their intentions clearly.

For P4, learners will be able to work safely when using specialist equipment and machinery.

For P5, learners will be able to review and record (through notes on tutorials and annotations in their course file) their production process and final outcomes to reach relevant conclusions. These will be expressed

simply, and will show understanding of the original design brief and its constraints. Learners will consider examples of others' work, considering how successfully they have met similar briefs to their own.

For M1, learners will have responded individually to the theme in producing a variety of proposals. Learners will show skill and competence in applying knowledge of materials, techniques, processes and construction methods to the development of the theme and practical work undertaken.

For M2, evidence of discussions might take the form of competent handwritten annotations alongside learners' work or recordings of their evaluations. It could also include learners' annotated sketches and studies for their initial recording and ideas, together with effective notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of a range of materials and techniques. This evidence could also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, work will be presented using skilful use of techniques.

For D2, learners will show understanding of their working practices, and be able to identify key points within the development of their work and that of others. They will be able to identify the ways in which their designs and practical work were affected by constraints, and the action they took to overcome this.

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3, P4, P5 M1, M2 D1, D2	<b>Assignment number 1:</b> Making an Accessory for a Celebrity	Accessory designer briefed to create items for music tour	Presentation of work and final outcome to group

### Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
An Accessory Project	Working with Fashion Design Briefs	Ideas and Concepts in Art and Design
	Working with Textiles Briefs	Fashion Media, Techniques and Technology

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCS Skills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work

- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work

#### Skillfast-UK, Textiles and Material Design

- HS1 Health, safety and security at work
- D1 Research design information and ideas for textiles and materials using a range of techniques
- D3 Develop design responses for textiles and materials to meet agreed requirements
- D2 Develop and communicate design ideas for textiles and materials
- D4 Contribute to producing detailed designs for textiles and materials
- D5 Contribute to realising design prototypes for textiles and materials
- D6 Contribute to realising final textiles and materials design
- D9 Clarify textile and material design briefs and research information
- D10 Develop alternative textile and material design ideas
- D12 Develop, produce and present design responses
- D13 Plan and manage design work
- D14 Realise design prototypes
- D15 Plan and contribute to the realisation of final textile and material design.

### Essential resources

Adequate studio space is required to allow learners to develop paper and card design ideas into experimental and innovative accessory samples and outcomes. Workshops must include essential equipment and facilities suitable for a specialist fashion accessory pathway. This unit can be interpreted as jewellery design and making in which case appropriate jewellery-making facilities must be available. For millinery construction appropriate hat blocks and hat steamers must be accessed. Learners should have internet access and the facility to access publications and journals for historical and contemporary research. Learners should also be encouraged to attend exhibitions, galleries, external workshops, trade shows and studio artists.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with practising artists, craftspeople and designers, to deliver assignments to learners or to provide work experience.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects', for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

Skillfast-UK, the sector skills council for fashion and textiles, give careers advice and industry information, plus regularly updated news and events pages on their website ([www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob](http://www.skillfast-uk.org/justthejob)).

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Belanger Grafton C - *Shoes, Hats and Fashion Accessories* (Dover Pictoral Archives, 1998) ISBN 978-0486401034

Brand J and Teunissen J - *Fashion and Accessories* (Terra Uitgeverij, 2007) ISBN 978-

9058976796 Cox C - *Bags: an Illustrated History* (Aurum Press Ltd, 2007) ISBN 978-1845131913

Edmunds J - *Three Dimensional Embroidery* (Batsford, 2009) ISBN 978-1906388546

Huey S and Proctor P - *New Shoes: Contemporary Footwear Design* (Laurence King Publishing, 2007) ISBN 978-1856695077

McCreight T - *Jewellery: Fundamentals of Metalsmithing (Jewellery)* (Hand Books, 1999) ISBN 978-1880140291

Walford J and Levine B - *The Seductive Shoe: Four Centuries of Fashion Footwear* (Thames & Hudson, 2007) ISBN 978-0500513460

Woodsford E - *Machine Embroidery and Textile Decoration: Inspirational Projects for Creative Clothing and Accessories* (Apple Press, 2006) ISBN 978-1845431174

### Websites

[www.luluguinness.com/history.php](http://www.luluguinness.com/history.php)

Fashion accessory designer website

[www.vam.ac.uk](http://www.vam.ac.uk)

The website for the Victoria and Albert Museum

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	researching and developing ideas to meet the requirements of the design brief
Creative thinkers	developing ideas to meet design intentions. Using appropriate processes to assemble and present outcomes
Reflective learners	thinking about stages of design development and selection of materials and processes. Developing maquettes. Evaluating outcomes
Team workers	sharing studio space and equipment
Self-managers	producing work to meet deadlines
Effective participators	participating in presentation of work.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
Independent enquirers	visiting galleries and museums to extend understanding and set ideas in context
Creative thinkers	experimenting with materials and processes developing design ideas through to a final outcome
Reflective learners	reviewing samples processes and using experience to improve work considering environmental issues in the design process
Team workers	observing health and safety requirements for the benefit of themselves and the group
Self-managers	independently managing own research and development of outcomes
Effective participators	participating in group critique and feedback.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	using ICT packages to size designs
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	planning for the production of a final outcome
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	obtaining information from secure internet sites
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	researching accessory design ideas, methods and processes including web-based material and CDs
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	exploring, extracting and assessing the relevance of information from websites and CDs
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	exchanging emails with tutor using VLE message boards
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Understand routine and non-routine problems in a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar contexts and situations	measuring patterns and scaling up designs; estimating material quantities
Identify the situation or problem and the mathematical methods needed to tackle it	
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	
Use appropriate checking procedures and evaluate their effectiveness at each stage	
Interpret and communicate solutions to practical problems in familiar and unfamiliar routine contexts and situations	

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	discussing own accessory designs and those of others
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	seeking and reading and responding to research
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	annotating sketchbooks writing up evaluation of outcome.

# Unit 17: Working with Moving Image Briefs

Unit code: L/502/4871

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

In this unit learners will be introduced to the field of the moving image. Through applied research they will develop a moving image piece based on a set assignment. Learners will gain skills and understanding in the pre-production, production and post-production phases of making a piece of film- or video-based artwork.

## ● Unit introduction

The field of moving image covers areas including video and television. Artists have also used moving image as a vehicle for communicating a message or intention in video- or film-based artwork. Independent filmmakers have manipulated the genre to fulfil ideas that range from surrealism to documentary. Designers exploit television's ability to gain access to our homes through the use of moving images in advertising productions. Much of our contemporary communication involves moving image.

Learners will be taught how to plan and produce a piece of moving image-based work. This will involve them learning how to plan and manage the production process, and to use technical equipment properly and safely.

Learners will be able to develop personal themes and ideas in their work for this unit. They will work with appropriate technology to produce their final piece. Finally, they will review their moving image outcome against the original ideas or intentions they set out to pursue in the brief.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use materials, techniques and technology for moving image briefs
- 2 Be able to plan and develop ideas for a digital art and design brief
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of moving image work.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to use materials, techniques and technology for moving image briefs

*Materials:* eg cels, drawing materials, plasticine, card, paper, paint, voice, script, storyboard, software, hardware

*Techniques:* eg hand drawn, modelling, photographing, stop animation, importing, key framing, rotoscoping, time lapse, filming, videoing, foley sound, sound effects, voiceover

*Technology:* eg still cameras, movie cameras, computers, lighting, microphones

*Briefs:* eg genres, short films, ident, features, documentaries, animations

### 2 Be able to plan and develop ideas for a moving image brief

*Plan a moving image project:* planning eg storyboard, pre-production, production, post production; intentions eg subject matter, theme, idea, documentary, narrative, text, advertising, fine art piece; resources eg location, studio, sets, costumes, props, actors, script, equipment; constraints; opportunities eg criteria for success, risk assessments, location filming permissions

*Create a moving image project:* production eg film, video, television, camera equipment, peripherals, safety, timescale, deadline, equipment, resources, image capture, in-camera editing, post-production editing, file saving protocols; presentation formats eg screen-based, hand-held devices, projection, film, DVD, QuickTime movie, web streaming, download, Flash movie

### 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of moving image work

*Development of own and others' work:* compared with original intentions; technical qualities; aesthetic qualities; limitations; opportunities

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Production process:* technical competencies; creative abilities; time management

*Sources of information:* self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, tutors, client; documentation eg notes from tutorials, annotation, notes from audience feedback, production diaries

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use materials, techniques and technology safely [IE]	<b>M1</b> explore materials, techniques and technology effectively	<b>D1</b> integrate materials, techniques and technology creatively and independently
<b>P2</b> plan and develop ideas and outcomes for a moving image brief [RL; CT]	<b>M2</b> purposefully present coherent ideas for a moving image project	<b>D2</b> independently present imaginative idea for a moving image project
<b>P3</b> select materials, techniques and processes for a moving image brief [CT]	<b>M3</b> select materials, techniques and processes, using them effectively for a moving image brief	<b>D3</b> integrate diverse materials, techniques and processes, using creatively and independently for a moving image brief
<b>P4</b> discuss successful moving image work. [RL]	<b>M4</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D4</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

Delivery of this unit will involve learners in researching the field of moving image and proposing ideas for an assignment that they produce. Delivery can take the form of the assignments shown in the outline learning plan, where learners are introduced to the subject through a tutor-led presentation. Learning outcome 1 can be taught through assignment 1: practical examples using moving image. In this assignment tutors should deliver a presentation that highlights the different applications of moving image-based work; areas studies could include documentary, short narrative pieces, visual responses to soundscapes and experimental videos. Tutors' presentations could include examples from current television series, such as *3 Minute Wonders* on Channel 4 to work by artists such as Bill Viola, or work from the portfolio of LUX. Learners should develop their ideas and short pieces of moving image in areas in which they are considering working for their own extended practical piece. This process can be supported by learners independently undertaking research tasks, and discussing their conclusions. The activities address learning outcomes 1 and 2. For learning outcome 2, learners should use the understanding gained to plan and produce a completed moving image piece, based on their particular area of interest. The scope allowed for this will depend on the level of available resources in the centre, and the amount of technical and tutorial support tutors are able to offer. Tutors should review learners' plans to ensure the requirements of the unit are being fulfilled, and sign these plans off when agreed.

Learning outcome 2 involves learners in supporting their development work from the planning stage to a completed moving image piece through the evaluation and selection of appropriate resources. In doing this they will need technical support and access to appropriate physical resources, and technical areas and equipment. Introductions to specific equipment and processes should include briefings on relevant health and safety and safe working guidelines, for example, using red-heads safely, cabling up cameras and lights correctly to avoid trip hazards, and so on. Learners should manage their time effectively to ensure all aspects of the production and post-production stages in their assignment are achievable within the timescale of the unit. Assignment 2: the personal project, in the outline learning plan highlights a possible structure for delivering this aspect of the units.

For learning outcome 3, on completion, learners should be given an opportunity to screen their outcomes and to gather audience feedback, from tutors, peers and any interested parties. This will assist them in being able to complete an in-depth and comprehensive evaluation of their project. They can weigh up their degree of success against their knowledge of others' work and identify opportunities for further development.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Unit read through and outline scope of the unit.
<b>Assignment 1: Practical Examples Using Moving Image</b>
Group read through. Tutor-led presentations of examples of film and video applied to fine arts, television, independent film makers and historical examples. Learners independently research into forms of moving image. Learners independently produce and present examples of different forms and compile research in work journals or digital records. Learners discuss conclusions.
<b>Assignment 2: Personal Project (themes can be set by tutor but can be broad enough to encourage learners to take ownership ie documentary)</b>
Stage 1 - identify subject - learners (can relate subject to previous work in other units and/or ideas generated from research tasks in assignment 1). Stage 2 - produce a plan for the production of the piece - work in liaison with tutor/s and technician/s to ensure health and safety and risk assessments are carried out. Stage 3 - sign off plan, ensure all storyboards/roughs/visuals are ready as required. Stage 4 - shoot the piece/s. Stage 5 - compile/capture/edit as required. Stage 5 - export in format as required. Stage 6 - present piece; evaluate reactions and audience/gallery feedback. During part of this time, learners work independently.

## Assessment

Assessment for this unit can be delivered through a structure shown in the assignments in the outline learning plan.

For P1, learners will be able to propose a basic understanding of moving image as applied to the different areas considered, and be able to relate it in a simple and appropriate manner to their own ideas.

For P2, learners will be able to plan their moving image piece, and this plan will detail the different stages of pre-production, production and post-production. Ideas will be stated but not fully developed. There may be a general intention, but the marrying of idea, visuals and plan will not be coherently or imaginatively developed. Sources and subjects chosen may tend to be obvious.

For P3, learners will have produced a moving image outcome that clearly meets the requirements of the brief. Techniques and processes will have been used at a basic level of competence with appropriate selection of materials, techniques and processes. The resulting piece can tend to be under realised.

Evidence for P4 might be integrated with the evidence for P1, P2 and P3. The evidence for P4 could take the form of learners' video records, discussions and interviews. Comments will be descriptive rather than detailed and evaluative. This evidence might also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records. Learners will need to reflect on others' work that follows similar themes, subject matter or uses similar processes or materials. Visits to galleries, exhibitions, and especially visits from practitioners, will give learners opportunities to examine others' working processes in detail. The evidence may be presented in the form of a video diary or vlog.

Work produced at M1 will demonstrate a much more in-depth investigation in to the field of moving image. Conclusions will have been reached that show understanding of the genre. Examples considered will be used to demonstrate coherence.

For M2, learners will produce a considered plan that has the potential to reach a much more effective and exciting conclusion than in work in the lower grades. Ideas will be related to visuals to be sourced. Storyboarding and any scripting will be handled in an effective manner. For M3, learners will have developed their plan to produce an effective and coherent final piece. Ideas will have been well developed, and refinement/adaptations will have been carefully chosen. The final outcome will communicate its intended message in an individual way.

Evidence for M4 could be integrated with the evidence for M1, M2 and M3. The evidence for M4 could take the form of learners' effectively edited video, together with competent notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of materials and techniques. Learners will need to draw comparisons with the work of others. This evidence might also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

For D1, learners will have been able to carry out a much more sophisticated investigation into the field of moving image. The examples chosen will be understood, and comparisons used to demonstrate the thinking behind the analysis provided. Learners will be able to discuss their conclusions with perception and clarity.

For D2, learners will have produced an informed and purposeful plan that has the potential to provide for an imaginative and exciting final outcome. The plan will be tight enough to control the production and postproduction processes, whilst encouraging a particularly original approach. Learners' evaluations will conform the comprehension in their planning stages.

For D3, learners will have developed their plan into an original piece of moving image that is genuinely exciting in its approach or treatment of subjects and themes. Techniques, equipment and processes will have been managed and integrated with some independence. Learners will be able to explain the strengths and development areas in their work with insight.

Evidence for D4 might be integrated with the evidence for D1, D2 and D3. This evidence for D4 might take the form of learners' confidently edited video, together with in-depth scripted analysis on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of materials and techniques, linked to insights on others' similar work. This evidence might also be achieved through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P4, P5 M1, M4 D1, D4	<b>Assignment 1: Practical Examples Using Moving Image</b>	An independent filmmaker producing a showreel.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>work journals, digital records, short moving image piece, with notes from tutor presentation and own research.</li> </ul>
P2, M2, D2 P3, M3, D3	<b>Assignment 2: Personal Project</b>	An independent filmmaker produces work for a film festival.	Portfolio of evidence consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>learners' preliminary work and initial ideas</li> <li>learners' presentation of ideas for project</li> <li>learners' use of digital technologies in sourcing, capturing, manipulating and outputting digital and moving image-related files</li> <li>tutor observation of studio practice</li> <li>learners' practical work and final outcomes</li> <li>learners' reviews of working practices and outcomes</li> <li>presentation at close of assignment to include pre-production, production and post-production stages as required.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
A Personal Project	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	Art and Design Specialist Contextual Investigation
	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	Digital Image Capture and Editing
		Digital Storytelling
		Film and Video Editing Techniques
		Producing Video Installation Work
		Single Camera Techniques

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCSKills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief
- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES23 Create 2D Designs using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES24 Create 3D Models using a Computer Aided Design System
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work

#### Skillset, Animation

- ANIM 1 Work Effectively In Animation
- ANIM 2 Manage and Store Assets
- ANIM 8 Create Designs
- ANIM 9 Visualise The Script
- ANIM 10 Edit Timings
- ANIM 11 Create 2D Assets For Production
- ANIM 12 Create 2D Animation
- ANIM 13 Finalise Artwork for 2D Animation
- ANIM 14 Set Up 3D Elements For Animation
- ANIM 15 Create 3D Animation
- ANIM 16 Render 3D Animation
- ANIM 17 Build Characters (Models) for Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 18 Set Up Lighting and Cameras For Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 19 Create Stop Motion Animation
- ANIM 21 Create Digital Visual Effects

#### Skillset, Design for the Moving Image

- DMI 1 Assist With The Technical Design Process
- DMI 4 Assess The Technical Implications Of The Design Brief
- DMI 3 Contribute To The Production Of Designs Using I.T.
- DMI 5 Allocate Drawing Requirements
- DMI 7 Create Models For Use In Productions
- DMI 30 Create Physical Artwork For Graphic Designs For The Moving Image
- DMI 31 Edit Graphic Sequences To Specification
- DMI 34 Produce Graphic Elements On Electronic Media
- DMI 36 Interpret Graphic Design Requirements

#### Skillset, Interactive Media and Computer Games

- IM1 Work Effectively in Interactive Media
- IM6 Use Authoring Tools to Create Interactive Media Products
- IM9 Provide Creative and Strategic Direction for Interactive Media Projects
- IM16 Plan Content for Web and Multimedia Products
- IM17 Architect Interactive Media Products
- IM20 Design Electronic Games
- IM24 Create 2D Animations for Interactive Media Products
- IM27 Create Sound Effects for Interactive Media Products
- IM28 Create Music for Interactive Media Products.

## Skillset, Photo Imaging

- D1 Create Original Artwork for Digital Images
- D2 Carry out Specified Image Scanning
- D3 Plan and Produce Scanned Images
- D4 Carry out Specified Image Editing
- D5 Plan and Produce Edited Images
- D6 Prepare for, and Produce, Image Output
- D7 Contribute to the Effectiveness of Imaging Activities
- D8 Send and Receive Image Data Files by Digital Means
- D11 Edit Images Using a Digital Processing Station.

## Essential resources

Delivery of this unit will involve an analysis and appraisal of examples of moving image. This experience will support learners in developing a personal practical project that builds a response to a set or self-generated brief.

Learners will need access to specialist equipment and studios for image development and capture, depending on the types of project being developed and the available resources. Learners should be given suitable technical support to be able to gather and use appropriate cameras and peripherals. All aspects of health and safety should be covered by practical demonstrations led by tutors or technicians, for example safe operation of portable lighting. Access to suitable post-production facilities, computer labs and software are essential. A venue for screening/installing or displaying final outcomes is desirable.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

This unit can be delivered through a live project. Centres should aim to develop links with appropriate local organisations who would be willing to support learners in producing work for a specific aim. Local galleries/museums may be able to work in partnership to give learners video art or film-related workshops from visiting practitioners.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme and for work experience and employment.

Learners should be regularly informed and updated on progression routes to further education and of job opportunities on completion of their course. Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

Skillset, the sector Skills Council for the audio visual industries has a section of their website dedicated to careers - see [www.skillset.org/careers](http://www.skillset.org/careers)

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Evans R - *Practical DV Film Making* (Focal Press, 2002) ISBN 978-

0240807386 Hardy P - *Filming on a Microbudget* (Pocket Essentials, 2009) ISBN  
978-1842433010

Jones C and Jolliffe G - *The Guerrilla Film Makers Handbook* (Continuum, 2000) ISBN 978-0826447135

Millerson G - *Video Production Handbook* (Focal Press, 2008) ISBN 978-0240520803

Musberger R - *Single Video Camera Production* (Focal Press, 2005) ISBN 978-0240807065

Roberts-Breslin J - *Making Media: Foundations of Sound and Image Production* (Focal Press, 2007) ISBN 978-0240809076

Seger L - *From Script to Screen* (Lone Eagle, 2003) ISBN 978-1580650540

Wohl M - *Apple Pro Training Series: Advanced Editing Techniques in Final Cut Pro 5* (Peachpit Press, 2005) ISBN 978-0321335494

### Websites

[www.bfi.org.uk](http://www.bfi.org.uk)

The British Film Institute

[www.lux.org.uk](http://www.lux.org.uk)

Arts agency website for the moving image

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	carrying out research into the field of moving image adapting ideas in response to results of digital art and design media exploration working with digital technologies in the production process producing the final outcome and ensuring it meets the brief
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	developing and adapting ideas in response to the brief developing the plan for production and post-production responding to captured imagery
<b>Reflective learners</b>	considering their plan in light of feedback from peers and tutors adapting and refining ideas as they work through the production and post-production processes.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	researching aspects of moving film genres and the pictorial/screen devices used
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	using formal visual elements such as composition to enhance meaning or emotional effect of final piece
<b>Reflective learners</b>	considering how different visual elements may or may not work together
<b>Team workers</b>	working in a small production team (if applicable)
<b>Self-managers</b>	managing the pre-production, production and post-production process.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	producing video for a brief
Use ICT to effectively plan work and evaluate the effectiveness of the ICT system they have used	producing and reviewing moving image work
Manage information storage to enable efficient retrieval	developing their moving image work
Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices	
Troubleshoot	solving problems with equipment
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	sourcing digital files and information from online tutorials
Access, search for, select and use ICT-based information and evaluate its fitness for purpose	sourcing information from websites and electronic publications about moving image
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	producing moving image work to meet a brief
Bring together information to suit content and purpose	considering the audience for a particular moving image brief
Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience	planning the work
Evaluate the selection and use of ICT tools and facilities used to present information	evaluating different methods for presenting moving image work
Select and use ICT to communicate and exchange information safely, responsibly and effectively including storage of messages and contact lists	investigating the work of others
<b>Mathematics</b>	
Select and apply a range of skills to find solutions	creating time lapse animations

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	recording discussions on progress of own and others' work
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	sourcing and reading information about moving image and practitioners reading and absorbing information about health and safety relating to peripherals/equipment to be used
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	gathering and recording relevant technical information about equipment compiling information from reviews or presentations.

# Unit 18: Working with Site-specific Briefs

Unit code: R/502/4872

Level 2: BTEC First

Credit value: 10

Guided learning hours: 60

## ● Aim and purpose

The aim of this unit is for learners to understand what a site-specific brief is and what opportunities and constraints artists or designers have to take into consideration when working with site-specific artwork. Learners will design, justify and create their own site-specific outcome.

## ● Unit introduction

Site-specific art is artwork created to exist in a certain place. Typically, the artist takes the location into account while planning and creating the artwork. Public art is accessible to the public whereas site-specific art can be situated in remote and inaccessible spaces. Creating artwork to be placed somewhere specific can be an exciting task. Artists need to consider the intended audience, the space they can work with, if the work will look effective within the surrounding urban or natural landscape, and how permanent the materials will be in the particular environment. If the work is not permanent it will need to be documented with video or photography.

Many towns and cities, and more rural areas, include public artwork in their environment. Learners should be encouraged to consider and critically examine existing work, both historical and contemporary, as they may find it inspiring.

Learners should experiment and become familiar with the processes involved in creating site-specific artwork and develop their work through drawings and sketches, to maquettes and final pieces.

Practical investigations should form the basis of this unit, with learners investigating different techniques and developing proposals for their own work. Learners' experiments and investigations should be recorded, so their process and development is clear. Importance should be placed on the requirements of the brief, use of materials and consideration of the proposed location.

## ● Learning outcomes

**On completion of this unit a learner should:**

- 1 Be able to use materials, techniques and technology for site-specific briefs
- 2 Be able to plan and develop ideas for a site-specific brief
- 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of work for site-specific briefs.

## Unit content

---

### 1 Be able to use materials, techniques and processes for site-specific briefs

*Materials:* planning eg design sheets, drawings, sketches, sketchbooks, brainstorming, thumbnail sketches, testing, maquettes, plan drawings of chosen site, photographs of chosen site, mood boards; producing eg wood, stone, metal, ceramic, plaster, wire, found materials, projections, ephemeral materials, architecture, landscape

*Techniques:* consultation eg feedback from residents, locals, workplace, spectators, displays, outlines, visualisations, photographic montage; making eg carving, moulding, forming, shaping, joining, construction, modelling, fixing, rearranging, painting, performance, landscaping, indoor, experimental

*Processes:* eg low impact, temporary, permanent, environmental, recycling, renewable energy, regeneration, locally available materials, tools, machinery

### 2 Be able to plan and develop ideas for a site-specific brief

*Plan a site-specific project:* planning eg locations (urban, industrial, natural, public, remote), opportunities, funding, size, effect, material, stability, moveable parts, health and safety; intentions eg brief, personal, community involvement; resources eg local materials, in situ, recycled, machinery, people, skills; opportunities eg criteria for success, risk assessments, permissions, ownership

*Briefs:* eg interior, new build, environmental, regeneration, mock up, visualisation, scale model

*Outcomes:* scale models eg maquettes, card, wood, acrylic, clay, plaster, plasticine, wire, paper, modroc, textiles, glass, wax, stone, scrap materials, found objects, ceramics, visualisation; full size eg construction, sculpture, land art, stone work, leaf and soil creations, installation, ice sculpture, water and snow, tree bark, logs, twigs, found objects, natural, manufactured

### 3 Understand the successful characteristics and quality of work for site-specific briefs

*Development of own and others' work:* compared with original intentions; technical qualities; aesthetic qualities; limitations; opportunities

*Characteristics:* analysis eg alternative options; exploring properties eg effects, uses, limitations, creative potential; suitability eg purpose, factors, opportunities, constraints (time, specialist equipment, other resources, budget, content), presentation; others' projects eg similar briefs, commercial, professional, success (projects, campaigns, influence)

*Production process:* technical competencies; creative abilities; time management

*Sources of information:* self-evaluation; comments from others eg audience, peers, tutors, client; documentation eg notes from tutorials, annotation, notes from audience feedback, production diaries

## Assessment and grading criteria

In order to pass this unit, the evidence that the learner presents for assessment needs to demonstrate that they can meet all the learning outcomes for the unit. The assessment criteria for a pass grade describe the level of achievement required to pass this unit.

Assessment and grading criteria		
To achieve a pass grade the evidence must show that the learner is able to:	To achieve a merit grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass criteria, the learner is able to:	To achieve a distinction grade the evidence must show that, in addition to the pass and merit criteria, the learner is able to:
<b>P1</b> use site-specific materials, techniques and processes safely [CT]	<b>M1</b> explore materials, techniques and processes effectively	<b>D1</b> integrate diverse materials, techniques and processes creatively and independently
<b>P2</b> develop effective ideas and outcomes for site-specific briefs [IE; CT]	<b>M2</b> purposefully present coherent ideas for site-specific briefs	<b>D2</b> independently present imaginative ideas and outcomes for site-specific briefs
<b>P3</b> select materials, techniques and processes for site-specific briefs [EP; RL]	<b>M3</b> compare and contrast experimental, development and final creative works.	<b>D3</b> evaluate experimental, development and final creative works.
<b>P4</b> discuss successful work for site-specific briefs. [RL; SM]		

**PLTS:** This summary references where applicable, in the square brackets, the elements of the personal, learning and thinking skills applicable in the pass criteria. It identifies opportunities for learners to demonstrate effective application of the referenced elements of the skills.

<b>Key</b>	IE - independent enquirers CT - creative thinkers	RL - reflective learners TW - team workers	SM - self-managers EP - effective participators
------------	--	---	--

## Essential guidance for tutors

---

### Delivery

This unit builds on and develops learners' knowledge and understanding and seeks to broaden their skills in 3D development and materials. The learning experiences from the unit involve:

- understanding what a 'site' is and recording it
- exploring a theme
- planning own work
- producing maquettes
- exploring materials and techniques
- presenting work.

Tutors delivering this unit should give learners opportunities to visit the site and record it in many ways. An understanding of how light and weather will affect the artwork (if outside) should be discussed. Size, material and health and safety should be integral in forming part of the learner's knowledge for this unit, for example, a large, sharp metal sculpture in a primary school would not be practical, and a lightweight tissue paper sculpture on top of a hill may not have durability.

Tutors delivering this unit should give learners opportunities to investigate a wide range of materials, techniques and tools. Most of the learners' work will be carried out in a studio or workshop environment where they should be able to participate in highly-directed sessions and be shown demonstrations of how to use various materials and development techniques.

To contextualise this investigation and experimentation and to reinforce learning, teaching should include visits to galleries and, if possible, visits from professional practitioners. Learners should be directed towards examples of the work of others and be encouraged to research these and their own examples using the internet, libraries and multimedia sources. This will inform learning by encouraging analytical skills.

This unit should be delivered to provide a very broad introduction to a wide range of materials, for example card, clay, plasticene, wire, wood, modroc, plaster relief, ceramic tiles, metals, natural forms, withies, leaves, soil, grass, glass and found objects. The equipment needed to teach the techniques associated with these materials must be available, for example carving tools, wire cutters, plaster equipment, clay tools, wood cutting and sanding tools, adhesives and different fixing materials, cameras, scanners, video cameras.

Tutors could consider integrating the delivery and assessment of this unit with any other relevant units the learner is taking as part of the programme of study, especially those requiring 3D materials. In planning delivery of the assignment briefs tutors should be aware of the need to track the relevant learning outcomes of the units being covered.

Health and safety issues must be stressed, particularly when learners are in workshops using metal and woodcutting, construction and fixing techniques. Teaching of the correct use of relatively dangerous hand tools, for example drills, saws, knives, etc should be part of the workshop activity.

In learning outcome 1 learners will be working more practically using maquettes and experimenting with different materials. They will benefit from demonstrations of scaling-up work and working from plan drawings. Learners should use digital manipulation or photomontage to see if their chosen design looks effective in the specific space. They should then develop this idea into a maquette, initially in a lightweight easy-to-use material such as card, then evaluate if it is successful. Learners should then start to experiment with different materials.

Learning outcome 2 should be delivered after researching and viewing work from other artists/designers who work to site-specific briefs. So that learners can look at the work of others, access to the internet is expected. Learning outcome 2 could be completed after a visit to the chosen site had taken place, as this would put the unit into context and may make it easier for the learner to understand what a site-specific brief is. Learners may not be able to create an actual site-specific piece of artwork so a high quality maquette and digital manipulation or photographic montage should accompany the work to show it in its final setting. Tutors should seek to place selected pieces of learners' work in site-specific places in nearby locations even if only temporarily, as this will extend learners' understanding and appreciation of site-specific artwork. Tutors should stress the importance of a final outcome and the finish and presentation of all final work.

It is suggested that some activities, particularly those that are more complex, be repeated in response to a variety of sources to vary outcomes and improve motivation. Tutors should encourage learners to analyse the way in which a variety of materials and techniques work separately and in combination using a range of processes. Learners are expected to discuss their activities with the tutor using the correct technical terminology.

In learning outcome 3 the learner will need to understand the constraints on artists/designers when working to site-specific briefs. This is where the tutor has the opportunity to really engage in discussion with the learners; using presentations and discussing a variety of work would be extremely beneficial, showing a range of work from mosaics, to non-permanent land art to large-scale steel sculptures. Showing work from around the world will help learners to understand how land art is popular and has been for a long time. Showing examples of local artwork will help learners to put site-specific artwork into context, for example mosaics on library walls, figure sculptures of important people, interesting water fountains, large-scale modern sculptures etc. Learners will need to show that they understand the restrictions artists/designers have to work with and present their findings in some way. This could be in the form of written work, or a mood board or sketchbook format with examples of sculptures and notes added showing different restrictions for different pieces or artwork.

The support that learners need will vary according to their ability but all learners will need assistance in producing and presenting their individual responses for the unit.

## Outline learning plan

The outline learning plan has been included in this unit as guidance and can be used in conjunction with the programme of suggested assignments.

The outline learning plan demonstrates one way in planning the delivery and assessment of this unit.

Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment
Introduction to unit and structure of the programme - whole class.
Discuss briefs, suitable sites for outcomes and how many times the site will be visited. Create a mind map of initial ideas.
<b>Assignment 1: Researching Site-specific Briefs</b> - learners research and explore materials, techniques and processes through practical exploration and study of the work of others. They undertake a series of activities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mosaics, sculptures, land art, large-scale paintings, community, public</li> <li>• definitions</li> <li>• meanings</li> <li>• look at images</li> <li>• write own definition</li> <li>• prepare and give presentations, for example in pairs, onscreen, presentation boards, handouts.</li> </ul> Present all research, experimentation and annotation.
<b>Assignment 2: On-site Exploration</b> - learners visit four existing site-specific artworks, considering the opportunities and constraints for each piece. This could be produced as a written report, video diary, blog or website.
<b>Introduction to the site:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• visiting the site, walking around, understanding the space, viewing it from different angles, and heights</li> <li>• independently recording surrounding environment (through photographing, video, observational drawing, collecting secondary visual information etc).</li> </ul>
<b>Assignment 3: Exploring Site-specific Processes</b>
Introduction to making plan drawings, working from initial drawings and photographs.
Creating design sheets, drawings, sketchbooks, brainstorming, thumbnail sketches, mood boards.
Introduction to photographic montage and digital manipulation.
Introduction to working with scale.
Introduction to working with maquettes.
Photographing maquettes and using photographs of chosen site, to create photographic montage or digital manipulation to show how the outcome will look within the chosen environment and present work.
Learning the health and safety requirements of a range of tools and machinery and showing demonstrations of required materials below.

### Topic and suggested assignments/activities and/assessment

Experimenting and working with a range of materials such as:

- card
- clay
- plasticine™
- wire
- wood
- modroc
- plaster relief
- ceramic tiles
- metals
- natural forms, withies, leaves, soil, grass etc
- glass
- found objects
- digital media.

Independent working - approximately 12 hours.

Learners will record all their experiments, with photography and notes on the materials used up to this stage, to help them decide on material they want to use for their final outcome.

#### **Assignment 4: Production of Final Outcome**

- Creating maquettes out of chosen material/s.
- Identifying weaknesses in design and improving.
- Creating final outcome.
- Finishing.
- Presenting and reviewing work.

Independent working - approximately 12 hours.

## Assessment

To achieve P1 learners must use the correct development techniques involved when working to site-specific briefs, learners are expected to learn how to scale-up work in a straightforward way, with some consideration of aesthetics and potential. Learners should experiment with a variety of materials until they find one they can work with confidently. Tutors should give learners feedback so they know where their strengths are. When they have found materials that work successfully, learners should make maquettes in this material and develop their ideas further through this process. Evidence of their learning process and outcomes should be recorded. For example, photographs of the learner using the material and the successful outcomes they have produced presented in their sketchbook or on worksheets.

For P2, learners are expected to provide a correct but unelaborated outline of what a site-specific brief is. Learners can list examples, use images and annotate, or write in paragraphs. Evidence for this criterion might be taken from learners' sketchbooks or worksheets, chosen to show their understanding as well as show their awareness of other artists working to site-specific briefs. For example, artists' work could be presented in their sketchbook or on worksheets with small annotations and arrows showing how each artist has approached their chosen site differently. For example if studying Richard Serra, learners could explain how 'he has used a large steel sculpture in a nature park as he has a lot of space to use,' 'he has used steel as it is a very different colour to the natural greens around him'.

For P3, learners must show their understanding of the restrictions and constraints on artists when working to site-specific briefs. Learners are expected to show understanding of different limitations. This can be in the form of written work or presentations, or discussions with the tutor using witness statements. Learners should offer some basic limitations that artists/designers have to consider. For example 'if creating sculpture to go in the high street, artists cannot use very pointy or sharp glass objects as they may hurt people if they walk into them'; 'Artists have to make their artwork sturdy if it will be in a public place as people may climb on it or try to move it.'

Evidence for P4 might be integrated with the evidence for P1, P2 and P3. The evidence for P4 might take the form of learners' annotated sketches and studies for initial recording and ideas, together with limited notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of materials and techniques.

Annotation may be descriptive rather than detailed and evaluative. This evidence might also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records. Visualising the work in the proposed site and photographing it as it develops is useful to show the making and development of the project. To develop evaluative skills and confidence a writing frame can be used, giving the learner headings to consider on a regular basis.

Learners will need to reflect on others' work which follows similar themes, subject matter or uses similar sites, processes or materials. Visits to galleries, exhibitions and especially visits to site-specific works and visits from practitioners will give learners opportunities to examine others' working processes in detail.

For M1, learners at this level should carry out more creative experimentation, demonstrating a deeper understanding of the materials, techniques and processes used.

For M2, they should be able to present ideas for a site-specific brief in more detail, providing more examples than P2, with a more coherent choice of materials, techniques and processes than at P3. They will investigate a range of artists and at this level are expected to bring together understanding and coherent explanations, with more detailed explanations of their ideas, and show more understanding of limitations and restrictions.

To achieve M3, learners are expected to produce a comparison of their own work with that of others. This evidence might take the form of learners' effectively annotated sketches and studies for initial recording and ideas, together with competent notes on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of materials and techniques. This evidence could also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records. Use of digital manipulation or photomontage will be more sophisticated, with a realistic image of how the piece would be placed in the chosen site.

For D1, learners are expected to show creativity and independence in their work and be able to reflect on the effectiveness of their decision-making in their work. Their use of materials should be more extensive and they should have produced more imaginative maquettes. Assessment evidence would be shown in their drawings, photographs and write-ups of their experiments.

For D2, learners are required to present proposed outcomes for a site-specific brief coherently, showing a clear understanding. This might be evidenced more formally at distinction level, with importance on presentation, for example a presentation to the class, or presented well in their sketchbooks with images to support their understanding. Ideally, this would be evidenced by a realised work in situ. Learners should show a more in-depth understanding of the restrictions and constraints that artists/designers working to site-specific briefs have to consider, for example they could compare it to artists producing artwork for a gallery where safety ropes and guards are restricting the public from touching the work at all times, and explain how artists producing work for a gallery or a commission have more freedom with the health and safety aspects of their work.

For learners to achieve D3, the comparison between own and others' work should be characterised by creative, analytical thinking. Evidence for D3 could be integrated with the evidence for D1 and D2. This evidence might take the form of learners' confidently annotated sketches and studies for initial recording and ideas, together with in-depth written analysis on the quality of their ongoing achievement in their use of materials and techniques, linked to insight on similar work from others. This evidence could also be gathered through informal presentation and discussion or via witness statements and/or observation records.

### Programme of suggested assignments

The table below shows a programme of suggested assignments that cover the pass, merit and distinction criteria in the assessment and grading grid. This is for guidance and it is recommended that centres either write their own assignments or adapt any Pearson assignments to meet local needs and resources.

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P4 M1, M4 D1, D4	<b>Assignment 1:</b> Researching Site-specific Briefs	Historical and contemporary examples considered, with practical exploration of materials and techniques.	Portfolio of evidence which could consist of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• written work</li> <li>• practical experiments</li> <li>• presentation.</li> </ul>
P2 M2 D2	<b>Assignment 2:</b> On-site Exploration	Learners examine first hand the characteristics of four contrasting site-specific works.	Portfolio of evidence which could consist of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• commentary, group discussions on works visited</li> <li>• comparisons with artists and designers working for galleries</li> <li>• annotated images.</li> </ul>

Criteria covered	Assignment title	Scenario	Assessment method
P1, P2, P3 M1, M2, M3 D1, D2, D3	<b>Assignment 3: Exploring Site-specific Processes</b>	Using different materials and developing your idea for your own site-specific outcome.	Portfolio of evidence which could consist of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• photographs of experiments</li> <li>• printouts of digital work</li> <li>• digital files</li> <li>• maquettes</li> <li>• annotations of materials used and the strengths and weaknesses.</li> </ul>
P2, P3, P4 M2, M3, M4 D2, D3, D4	<b>Assignment 4: Production of Final Outcome</b>	Producing a final outcome whether it be a large-scale piece of work or a finished maquette.	Portfolio of evidence which could consist of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a final outcome</li> <li>• evaluations</li> <li>• all work presented.</li> </ul>

## Links to National Occupational Standards, other BTEC units, other BTEC qualifications and other relevant units and qualifications

This unit forms part of the BTEC Art and Design sector suite. This unit has particular links with the following unit titles in the Art and Design suite:

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Explore and Create Surface Relief	Working with 3D Design Briefs	Freelance Work in Art and Design
Explore 3D Fine Art	Working with 3D Design Craft Briefs	Community Art
		Location Photography
		Large-scale Working
		Large-scale Design
		Small-scale Working
		Small-scale Design
		Human-scale Working
		Human-Scale Design

This unit also provides development opportunities for some of the underpinning skills, knowledge and understanding of the following National Occupational Standards:

CCS Skills (Draft Design NOS, May 2009)

- DES1 Apply research on the history and theory of design to your own design activities
- DES2 Apply design industry knowledge to inform your own design work practice and work
- DES3 Use Critical Thinking Techniques in your design work
- DES4 Communicate the importance of the design brief

- DES5 Follow a design process
- DES6 Work effectively with others in a creative environment
- DES7 Contribute to the production of prototypes, models, mock-ups, samples or test pieces
- DES8 Explore the use of colour in a creative environment
- DES9 Research, test and apply techniques for the design of products
- DES10 Create visual designs
- DES11 Provide written information in relation to your design work
- DES12 Make a presentation
- DES15 Research and evaluate the nature of design in a specific industry context
- DES18 Interpret the design brief and follow the design process
- DES32 Apply concepts and theories of creativity and innovation to your own design work.

## Essential resources

The majority of learners' work will be carried out in the studio using 2D and/or 3D materials and equipment. It would be helpful to include visits to the 'site' and also to galleries, exhibitions, websites etc.

For this unit learners should have access to appropriate studio and workshop equipment. Depending on the materials the learner is using, this may include plaster, cardboard, clay, wire, wood and different metals. It would be beneficial if the learner had access to photographic equipment to produce photographic montage or digital manipulation.

## Employer engagement and vocational contexts

Centres should develop links with local designers, artists and galleries. Local councils may also have information about any site-specific work they have commissioned.

Links with employers are essential to the delivery of the programme for work experience and employment.

Vocational learning support resources:

- Learning and Skills Network - [www.vocationallearning.org.uk](http://www.vocationallearning.org.uk)

Business and finance advice:

- local and regional Business Link - [www.businesslink.gov.uk](http://www.businesslink.gov.uk)

Assignments should be vocationally relevant; centres should consider the delivery of 'live projects', for example to support the vocational content of the unit and programme.

Creative and Cultural Skills ([www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)), the sector skills council for design have launched the web portal Creative Choices ([www.creative-choices.co.uk](http://www.creative-choices.co.uk)). This portal has a range of information about careers in the design sector, including job descriptions.

## Indicative reading for learners

### Textbooks

Drathen D - *Rebecca Horn: Moon Mirror – Site-Specific Installations* (Hatje Cantz, April 2005) ISBN 978-3775791878

Kaye N - *Site Specific Art: Performance, Place and Documentation* (Routledge, 22 June 2000) ISBN 978-0415185592

Kwon M - *One Place After Another: Site-specific Art and Locational Identity* (MIT Press, 2 April 2004) ISBN 978-0262612029

Lydenberg R - *Gone: Site-specific Work by Dorothy Cross* (Chicago University Press, 11 October 2005) ISBN 978-1892850096

Pearson L - *Public Art Since 1950* (Shire Publications Ltd, 1 April 2006) ISBN 978-0747806424

Rugg J - *Exploring Site-specific Art: Issues of Space and Internationalism* (I B Tauris and Co Ltd, August 2009) ISBN 978-1848850644

Van Mourik Broekman P - *Locus Solus: Site, Identity and Technology in Contemporary Art* (Black Dog Publishing, 3 September 2001) ISBN 978-1901033618

### Websites

[www.bewsgorvin.co.uk](http://www.bewsgorvin.co.uk) Public sculpture website

[www.denarend.com/works/sculptures/index.htm](http://www.denarend.com/works/sculptures/index.htm) Public sculpture website

[www.griendlingdesigns.com/Pages/commissions.html](http://www.griendlingdesigns.com/Pages/commissions.html) Public sculpture website

[www.lyciatrouton.com](http://www.lyciatrouton.com) Online sculptor portfolio

## Delivery of personal, learning and thinking skills

The table below identifies the opportunities for personal, learning and thinking skills (PLTS) that have been included within the pass assessment criteria of this unit.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	researching artists working to site-specific briefs and trying to understand what a site-specific brief is
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	using a range of materials and developing their own final outcome
<b>Reflective learners</b>	examining the strengths and weaknesses of their first maquettes and trying to improve them
<b>Self-managers</b>	organising resources and materials and prioritising actions when producing their outcomes.

Although PLTS are identified within this unit as an inherent part of the assessment criteria, there are further opportunities to develop a range of PLTS through various approaches to teaching and learning.

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>Independent enquirers</b>	experimenting with materials they have never used before carrying out research on a variety of site-specific artwork
<b>Creative thinkers</b>	deciding what artwork will look successful in the chosen site, when considering surrounding environment adapting their ideas when they find a material difficult to use
<b>Reflective learners</b>	using feedback to improve and develop work evaluating their work
<b>Self-managers</b>	showing flexibility to change designs or ideas when materials are unavailable or not producing the desired outcome.

## ● Functional Skills – Level 2

Skill	When learners are ...
<b>ICT – Use ICT systems</b>	
Select, interact with and use ICT systems independently for a complex task to meet a variety of needs	researching meaning of site-specific briefs researching site-specific artists/designers using digital manipulation to visualise maquettes in the intended settings
<b>ICT – Find and select information</b>	
Select and use a variety of sources of information independently for a complex task	sourcing several images of artists' work to present and annotate, showing understanding of a site-specific brief.
<b>ICT – Develop, present and communicate information</b>	
Enter, develop and format information independently to suit its meaning and purpose including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• text and tables</li> <li>• images</li> <li>• numbers</li> <li>• records</li> </ul>	formatting images with digital manipulation to show maquette or design in chosen site
<b>English</b>	
Speaking and listening - make a range of contributions to discussions and make effective presentations in a wide range of contexts	presenting information researched on artists and different site-specific artwork writing about the limitations and constrictions artists/designers have to consider
Reading - compare, select, read and understand texts and use them to gather information, ideas, arguments and opinions	comparing site-specific work to work made for a gallery or private commissions
Writing - write documents, including extended writing pieces, communicating information, ideas and opinions, effectively and persuasively	communicating understanding of what a site-specific brief is, and the limitations involved communicating own findings and developments made along the process of using new materials.

## Further information and useful publications

To get in touch with us visit our 'Contact us' pages:

- books, software and online resources for UK schools and colleges:  
[www.pearsonschoolsandfecolleges.co.uk](http://www.pearsonschoolsandfecolleges.co.uk)

Key publications:

- *Adjustments for candidates with disabilities and learning difficulties, Access and Arrangements and Reasonable Adjustments, General and Vocational qualifications* (Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ))
- *Supplementary guidance for reasonable adjustments and special consideration in vocational internally assessed units* (Pearson)
- *General and Vocational qualifications, Suspected Malpractice in Examination and Assessments: Policies and Procedures* (JCQ)
- *Equality Policy* (Pearson)
- *Recognition of Prior Learning Policy and Process* (Pearson)
- *UK Information Manual* (Pearson)
- *BTEC UK Quality Assurance Centre Handbook*

All of these publications are available on our website.

Publications on the quality assurance of BTEC qualifications are also available on our website.

Our publications catalogue lists all the material available to support our qualifications. To access the catalogue and order publications, please visit our website.

## How to obtain National Occupational Standards

---

### **Creative and Cultural Skills**

Lafone House  
The Leathermarket  
Weston St  
London SE1 3HN

Telephone: 020 7015 1800  
Fax: 020 7015 1847  
Email: [info@ccskills.org.uk](mailto:info@ccskills.org.uk)  
Website: [www.ccskills.org.uk](http://www.ccskills.org.uk)

### **Skillset**

Focus Point  
21 Caledonian Road  
London N1 9GB

Telephone: 020 7713 9800  
Fax: 020 7713 9801  
Email: [info@skillset.org](mailto:info@skillset.org)  
Website: [www.skillset.org](http://www.skillset.org)

### **Skillfast-UK**

Richmond House  
Lawnswood Business Park  
Leeds LS16 6RD

Telephone: 0113 23 99 600  
Fax: 0113 23 99 601  
Email: [enquiries@skillfast-uk.org](mailto:enquiries@skillfast-uk.org)  
Website: [www.skillfast-uk.org](http://www.skillfast-uk.org)

### **The Occupational Standards (NOS) Directory**

Website: [www.ukstandards.org](http://www.ukstandards.org)

---

## Professional development and training

---

Pearson supports UK and international customers with training related to BTEC qualifications. This support is available through a choice of training options offered in our published training directory or through customised training at your centre.

The support we offer focuses on a range of issues including:

- planning for the delivery of a new programme
- planning for assessment and grading
- developing effective projects
- building your team and teamwork skills
- developing student-centred learning and teaching approaches
- building Functional Skills into your programme
- building in effective and efficient quality assurance systems.

The national programme of training we offer is on our website. You can request centre-based training through the website or you can contact one of our advisers in the Training from Pearson UK team via Customer Services to discuss your training needs.

---

## BTEC training and support for the lifetime of the qualifications

---

**Training and networks:** our training programme ranges from free introductory events through sector-specific opportunities to detailed training on all aspects of delivery, assignments and assessment. We also host some regional network events to allow you to share your experiences, ideas and best practice with other BTEC colleagues in your region.

**Regional support:** our team of Curriculum Development Managers and Curriculum Support Consultants, based around the country, are responsible for providing advice and support in centres. They can help you with planning and curriculum developments.

To get in touch with our dedicated support teams please visit our website.

---

## Your Pearson support team

---

Whether you want to talk to a sector specialist, browse online or submit your query for an individual response, there's someone in our Pearson support team to help you whenever - and however - you need:

- **Subject Advisors:** find out more about our subject advisor team - immediate, reliable support from a fellow subject expert
- **Ask the Expert:** submit your question online to our Ask the Expert online service and we will

make sure your query is handled by a subject specialist.

Please visit our website at [qualifications.pearson.com/en/support/contact-us.html](https://qualifications.pearson.com/en/support/contact-us.html)



# Annexe A

## The Pearson BTEC qualification framework for the Art and Design sector

Progression opportunities within the framework.

Level	General qualifications	BTEC full vocationally-related qualifications	BTEC Short Courses	NVQ/occupational
8				
7				
6				
5		Higher National Certificate and Diploma in Fashion and Textiles/ Fine Art/Graphic Design/Interactive Media/Photography/3D Design		
4		Higher National Certificate in Fashion and Textiles/Fine Art/ Graphic Design/Interactive Media/ Photography/3D Design  Pearson BTEC Level 4 Foundation Diploma in Art and Design		NVQ Design Management

Level	General qualifications		BTEC full vocationally-related qualifications	BTEC Short Courses	NVQ/occupational
3	GCE AS in Art and Design GCE Advanced in Art and Design AS in Applied Art and Design Advanced in Applied Art and Design		Pearson BTEC Level 3 Foundation Diploma in Art and Design Pearson BTEC Level 3 Certificate, Subsidiary Diploma, Diploma and Extended Diploma in Art and Design/Art and Design (Photography)/Art and Design (Graphic Design)/Art and Design (3D Design)/Art and Design (Fine Art)/Art and Design (Design Crafts)/Art and Design (Fashion and Clothing)/Art and Design (Textiles)/Art and Design (Interactive Media)	Award, Certificate and Diploma in Interactive Use of Media/3D Design/Design Crafts/Photography/Graphics/Textiles/Fashion and Clothing	NVQ Design
2		GCSE in Art and Design	Pearson BTEC Level 2 Certificate, Extended Certificate and Diploma in Art and Design	Award, Certificate and Diploma in Interactive Use of Media/3D Design/Photography/Graphics/Textiles/Fashion and Clothing	NVQ Design Support
1		GCSE Short Course in Art and Design	Foundation Learning Tier: Art and Design Units	Award, Certificate and Diploma in Interactive Use of Media/3D Design/Photography/Graphics/Textiles/Fashion and Clothing	
Entry					

# Annexe B

## Grading domains: BTEC Level 2 generic grading domains

Grading domain 1	Indicative characteristics – merit	Indicative characteristics – distinction
<b>Application of knowledge and understanding</b> (Learning outcome stem <i>understand</i> or <i>know</i> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show depth of knowledge and development of understanding in given situations (for example explain why, make judgements based on analysis).</li> <li>• Apply and/or select relevant concepts.</li> <li>• Apply knowledge to different contexts.</li> <li>• Apply knowledge to non-routine contexts (ie assessor selection).</li> <li>• Make comparisons.</li> <li>• Show relationships between pass criteria.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Synthesise knowledge and understanding across pass/merit criteria.</li> <li>• Evaluate concepts/ideas/actions.</li> <li>• Analyse/research and make recommendations.</li> <li>• Judges implications of application of knowledge/understanding.</li> <li>• Applies knowledge and understanding to complex activities/contexts.</li> </ul>
Grading domain 2	Indicative characteristics – merit	Indicative characteristics – distinction
<b>Development of practical and technical skills</b> (Learning outcome stem <i>be able to</i> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use advanced techniques/processes/skills successfully.</li> <li>• Act under limited supervision/demonstrate independence (note: pass cannot require support).</li> <li>• Apply to non-routine activities.</li> <li>• Demonstrate within time and/or resource constraints.</li> <li>• Produce varied solutions (including non-routine).</li> <li>• Modify techniques/processes to situations.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Demonstrate creativity/originality/own ideas.</li> <li>• Apply skill(s) to achieve higher order outcome.</li> <li>• Select and use successfully from a range of advanced techniques/processes/skills.</li> <li>• Reflects on skill acquisition and application.</li> <li>• Justifies application of skills/methods.</li> <li>• Makes judgements about risks and limitations of techniques/processes.</li> <li>• Innovates or generates of application of techniques/processes for new situations.</li> </ul>

Grading domain 3	Indicative characteristics – merit	Indicative characteristics – distinction
<b>Personal development for occupational roles</b> (Any learning outcome stem)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Takes responsibility in planning and undertaking activities.</li> <li>• Reviews own development needs.</li> <li>• Finds and uses relevant information sources.</li> <li>• Acts within a given work-related context showing understanding of responsibilities.</li> <li>• Identifies responsibilities of employers to the community and the environment.</li> <li>• Applies qualities related to the vocational sector.</li> <li>• Internalises skills/attributes (creating confidence).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manages self to achieve outcomes successfully.</li> <li>• Plans for own learning and development through the activities.</li> <li>• Analyses and manipulates information to draw conclusions.</li> <li>• Applies initiative appropriately.</li> <li>• Assesses how different work-related contexts or constraints would change performance.</li> <li>• Takes decisions related to work contexts.</li> <li>• Applies divergent and lateral thinking in work-related contexts.</li> <li>• Understands interdependence.</li> </ul>
Grading domain 4	Indicative characteristics – merit	Indicative characteristics – distinction
<b>Application of generic skills</b> (Any learning outcome stem)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Communicates using appropriate technical/professional language.</li> <li>• Makes judgements in contexts with explanations.</li> <li>• Explains how to contribute within a team.</li> <li>• Makes adjustments to meet the needs/expectations of others (negotiation skills).</li> <li>• Select and justify solutions for specified problems.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Presents self and communicates information to meet the needs of a typical audience.</li> <li>• Takes decisions in contexts with justifications.</li> <li>• Produces outputs subject to time/resource constraints.</li> <li>• Reflects on own contribution to working within a team.</li> <li>• Generate new or alternative solutions to specified problems.</li> </ul>

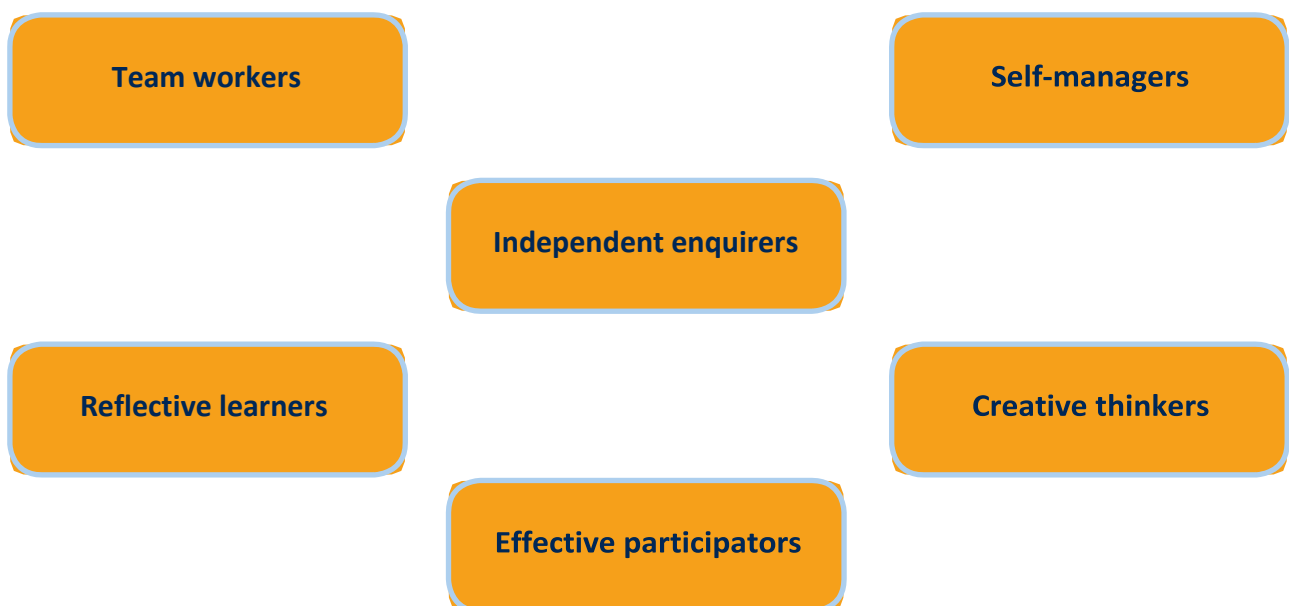
# Annexe C

## Personal, learning and thinking skills

### A FRAMEWORK OF PERSONAL, LEARNING AND THINKING SKILLS 11-19 IN ENGLAND

The framework comprises six groups of skills that, together with the Functional Skills of English, mathematics and ICT, are essential to success in learning, life and work. In essence the framework captures the essential skills of: managing self; managing relationships with others; and managing own learning, performance and work. It is these skills that will enable young people to enter work and adult life confident and capable.

The titles of the six groups of skills are set out below.



For each group there is a focus statement that sums up the range of skills. This is followed by a set of outcome statements that are indicative of the skills, behaviours and personal qualities associated with each group.

Each group is distinctive and coherent. The groups are also inter-connected. Young people are likely to encounter skills from several groups in any one learning experience. For example an independent enquirer would set goals for their research with clear success criteria (reflective learner) and organise and manage their time and resources effectively to achieve these (self-manager). In order to acquire and develop fundamental concepts such as organising oneself, managing change, taking responsibility and perseverance, learners will need to apply skills from all six groups in a wide range of learning contexts 11-19.

## The Skills

### Independent enquirers

**Focus:**

**Young people process and evaluate information in their investigations, planning what to do and how to go about it. They take informed and well-reasoned decisions, recognising that others have different beliefs and attitudes.**

**Young people:**

- identify questions to answer and problems to resolve
- plan and carry out research, appreciating the consequences of decisions
- explore issues, events or problems from different perspectives
- analyse and evaluate information, judging its relevance and value
- consider the influence of circumstances, beliefs and feelings on decisions and events
- support conclusions, using reasoned arguments and evidence.

### Creative thinkers

**Focus:**

**Young people think creatively by generating and exploring ideas, making original connections. They try different ways to tackle a problem, working with others to find imaginative solutions and outcomes that are of value.**

**Young people:**

- generate ideas and explore possibilities
- ask questions to extend their thinking
- connect their own and others' ideas and experiences in inventive ways
- question their own and others' assumptions
- try out alternatives or new solutions and follow ideas through
- adapt ideas as circumstances change.

### Reflective learners

**Focus:**

**Young people evaluate their strengths and limitations, setting themselves realistic goals with criteria for success. They monitor their own performance and progress, inviting feedback from others and making changes to further their learning.**

**Young people:**

- assess themselves and others, identifying opportunities and achievements
- set goals with success criteria for their development and work
- review progress, acting on the outcomes
- invite feedback and deal positively with praise, setbacks and criticism
- evaluate experiences and learning to inform future progress
- communicate their learning in relevant ways for different audiences.

### Team workers

**Focus:**

**Young people work confidently with others, adapting to different contexts and taking responsibility for their own part. They listen to and take account of different views. They form collaborative relationships, resolving issues to reach agreed outcomes.**

**Young people:**

- collaborate with others to work towards common goals
- reach agreements, managing discussions to achieve results
- adapt behaviour to suit different roles and situations, including leadership role
- show fairness and consideration to others
- take responsibility, showing confidence in themselves and their contribution
- provide constructive support and feedback to others.

### Self-managers

**Focus:**

**Young people organise themselves, showing personal responsibility, initiative, creativity and enterprise with a commitment to learning and self-improvement. They actively embrace change, responding positively to new priorities, coping with challenges and looking for opportunities.**

**Young people:**

- seek out challenges or new responsibilities and show flexibility when priorities change
- work towards goals, showing initiative, commitment and perseverance
- organise time and resources, prioritising actions
- anticipate, take and manage risks
- deal with competing pressures, including personal and work-related demands
- respond positively to change, seeking advice and support when needed
- manage their emotions, and build and maintain relationships.

### Effective participators

**Focus:**

**Young people actively engage with issues that affect them and those around them. They play a full part in the life of their school, college, workplace or wider community by taking responsible action to bring improvements for others as well as themselves.**

**Young people:**

- discuss issues of concern, seeking resolution where needed
- present a persuasive case for action
- propose practical ways forward, breaking these down into manageable steps
- identify improvements that would benefit others as well as themselves
- try to influence others, negotiating and balancing diverse views to reach workable solutions
- act as an advocate for views and beliefs that may differ from their own.

## PLTS performance indicator (suggested recording sheet)

Name:		Date:				
		Level of success 1 = low, 5 = high				
<b>Independent enquirers</b>						
Identify questions to answer and problems to resolve	1	2	3	4	5	
Plan and carry out research, appreciating the consequences of decisions	1	2	3	4	5	
Explore issues, events or problems from different perspectives	1	2	3	4	5	
Analyse and evaluate information, judging its relevance and value	1	2	3	4	5	
Consider the influence of circumstances, beliefs and feelings on decisions and events	1	2	3	4	5	
Support conclusions, using reasoned arguments and evidence	1	2	3	4	5	
<b>Creative thinkers</b>						
Generate ideas and explore possibilities	1	2	3	4	5	
Ask questions to extend their thinking	1	2	3	4	5	
Connect their own and others' ideas and experiences in inventive ways	1	2	3	4	5	
Question their own and others' assumptions	1	2	3	4	5	
Try out alternatives or new solutions and follow ideas through	1	2	3	4	5	
Adapt ideas as circumstances change	1	2	3	4	5	
<b>Reflective learners</b>						
Assess themselves and others, identifying opportunities and achievements	1	2	3	4	5	
Set goals with success criteria for their development and work	1	2	3	4	5	
Review progress, acting on the outcomes	1	2	3	4	5	
Invite feedback and deal positively with praise, setbacks and criticism	1	2	3	4	5	
Evaluate experiences and learning to inform future progress	1	2	3	4	5	
Communicate their learning in relevant ways for different audiences	1	2	3	4	5	

<b>Team workers</b>					
Collaborate with others to work towards common goals	1	2	3	4	5
Reach agreements, managing discussions to achieve results	1	2	3	4	5
Adapt behaviour to suit different roles and situations, including leadership roles	1	2	3	4	5
Show fairness and consideration to others	1	2	3	4	5
Take responsibility, showing confidence in themselves and their contribution	1	2	3	4	5
Provide constructive support and feedback to others	1	2	3	4	5
<b>Self-managers</b>					
Seek out challenges or new responsibilities and show flexibility when priorities change	1	2	3	4	5
Work towards goals, showing initiative, commitment and perseverance	1	2	3	4	5
Organise time and resources, prioritising actions	1	2	3	4	5
Anticipate, take and manage risks	1	2	3	4	5
Deal with competing pressures, including personal and work-related demands	1	2	3	4	5
Respond positively to change, seeking advice and support when needed	1	2	3	4	5
Manage their emotions, and build and maintain relationships.	1	2	3	4	5
<b>Effective participants</b>					
Discuss issues of concern, seeking resolution where needed	1	2	3	4	5
Present a persuasive case for action	1	2	3	4	5
Propose practical ways forward, breaking these down into manageable steps	1	2	3	4	5
Identify improvements that would benefit others as well as themselves	1	2	3	4	5
Try to influence others, negotiating and balancing diverse views to reach workable solutions	1	2	3	4	5
Act as an advocate for views and beliefs that may differ from their own	1	2	3	4	5

**Note to learner:** The circled number represents an indication of your PLTS performance so far.

**Note to tutor:** Indicate the level of success by circling the appropriate number during your feedback with the learner.

## Summary of the PLTS coverage throughout the programme

Personal, learning and thinking skills	Unit						
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Independent enquirers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Creative thinkers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓
Reflective learners	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Team workers	✓						✓
Self-managers	✓				✓		✓
Effective participators	✓	✓					
✓ – opportunities for development							

Personal, learning and thinking skills	Unit						
	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Independent enquirers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Creative thinkers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Reflective learners	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Team workers	✓			✓	✓		
Self-managers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Effective participators						✓	
✓ – opportunities for development							

Personal, learning and thinking skills	Unit			
	15	16	17	18
Independent enquirers		✓	✓	✓
Creative thinkers	✓	✓	✓	✓
Reflective learners		✓	✓	✓
Team workers				
Self-managers	✓	✓		✓
Effective participators				✓
✓ – opportunities for development				

# Annexe D

## Wider curriculum mapping

Study of the Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design gives learners opportunities to develop an understanding of spiritual, moral, ethical, social and cultural issues as well as an awareness of citizenship, environmental issues, European developments, health and safety considerations and equal opportunities issues.

The Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design makes a positive contribution to wider curricular areas as appropriate.

## Spiritual, moral, ethical, social and cultural issues

The specification contributes to an understanding of:

- spiritual issues - production of art and design artefacts or products is not inherently a spiritual activity, and should not be taught from the perspective of a particular spiritual belief or set of beliefs; individual production practice, however, may be informed by the spiritual beliefs of the practitioner
- moral and ethical issues - learners should be brought to appreciate the need to take responsibility for their own actions and those of others when making art and design artefacts or products, and to recognise the possible effects of their work upon others; they should also be introduced to the codes of professional practice relevant to the medium (or media) within which their programme is contextualised
- social and cultural issues - art and design is embedded within the social and cultural; a BTEC First programme should therefore seek to develop the learner's understanding of the wider cultural and ideological issues relating to the art and design industries. Learners should be introduced to, for example, issues such as the positive role of art and design as a mechanism for learning and socialisation when it acts as a vehicle for campaigning on social and moral issues and circulating discussions relating to race, gender, and cultural differences. Learners should also begin to think about the possible negative effects in such areas as ownership, control and corporate domination, bias, representation of minorities, propaganda, and cultural imperialism. Questions around the effects of art and design on society (in relation to advertising and consumerism, or the depiction of violence, for example) could also be considered.

## Environmental issues

Environmental education can be brought into the programme if learners wish to use this as a starting point for their own work or wish to study the work of other art and design practitioners who use it as subject matter in their work. Learners should be made aware of the possibilities of using sustainable resources.

## European developments

Much of the content of the Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design applies throughout Europe even though the delivery is in a UK context. There are opportunities within this specification to perform work with a European dimension, and this could be done through investigating the work of European art and design practitioners or producing original work with a European focus.

## **Citizenship issues**

Learners undertaking the Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design will have the opportunity to develop their understanding of citizenship issues, for example art and design contextual references to identity and diversity.

## **Environmental issues**

Learners undertaking the Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design will have the opportunity to develop their understanding of environmental issues, for example sustainability in 3D Design.

## **European developments**

Much of the content of the Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design applies throughout Europe even though delivery is in a UK context.

## **Health and safety considerations**

The Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design are practically based and health and safety issues are encountered throughout the units.

## **Equal opportunities issues**

Equal opportunities issues are implicit throughout the Pearson BTEC Level 2 Firsts in Art and Design.

## Wider curriculum mapping

### Level 2

	Unit 1	Unit 2	Unit 3	Unit 4	Unit 5	Unit 6	Unit 7
Spiritual	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Moral and ethical	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Social and cultural	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Citizenship issues	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Environmental issues	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
European developments	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Health and safety considerations	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Equal opportunities issues	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

	Unit 8	Unit 9	Unit 10	Unit 11	Unit 12	Unit 13	Unit 14
Spiritual	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Moral and ethical	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Social and cultural	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Citizenship issues	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Environmental issues	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
European developments	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Health and safety considerations	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Equal opportunities issues	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

	Unit 15	Unit 16	Unit 17	Unit 18
Spiritual	✓	✓	✓	✓
Moral and ethical	✓	✓	✓	✓
Social and cultural	✓	✓	✓	✓
Citizenship issues	✓	✓	✓	✓
Environmental issues	✓	✓	✓	✓
European developments	✓	✓	✓	✓
Health and safety considerations	✓	✓	✓	✓
Equal opportunities issues	✓	✓	✓	✓

# Annexe E

## National Occupational Standards/mapping with NVQs

The grid below maps the knowledge covered in the BTEC Firsts in Art and Design against the underpinning knowledge of the Creative and Cultural Skills SSC National Occupational Standards for Design (draft, 2009); Interactive Media and Computer Games, Photo Imaging, Design for the Moving Image and Animation National Occupational Standards suites from Skillset SSC; Textile and Material Design National Occupational Standards suites from Skillfast-UKSSC.

### KEY

- ✓ indicates that the BTEC Level 2 First unit covers all of the underpinning knowledge of the NVQ/NOS suite
- # indicates partial coverage of the NVQ/NOS suite
- a blank space indicates no coverage of the underpinning knowledge

	Units									
NOS/NVQs	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Design NOS (draft May 2009)	#	#	#	#	#	#	#	#	#	#
Interactive Media and Computer Games										
Photo Imaging								#		
Design for the Moving Image							#			
Animation										
Textiles and Material Design									#	#

	Units							
NOS/NVQs	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
Design NOS (draft May 2009)	#	#	#	#	#	#	#	#
Interactive Media and Computer Games		#			#		#	
Photo Imaging		#			#		#	
Design for the Moving Image		#			#		#	
Animation		#			#		#	
Textiles and Material Design						#		



## Annexe F

**BTEC First in Art and Design legacy (specification end date 31/08/2010)/BTEC First in Art and Design new (specification start date 01/09/2009) – unit mapping overview**

Old units	Unit 1	Unit 2	Unit 3	Unit 4	Unit 5	Unit 6	Unit 7	Unit 8	Unit 9	Unit 10
New units	Unit 1	Unit 2	Unit 3	Unit 4	Unit 5	Unit 6	Unit 7	Unit 8	Unit 9	Unit 10
Unit 1		F		P						
Unit 2	P			P						
Unit 3	P			P						
Unit 4			X	P						
Unit 5	P	P	P	P						
Unit 6		P		P						
Unit 7				P	F					
Unit 8				P		P				
Unit 9				P			F			
Unit 10				P				F		
Unit 11				P					F	
Unit 12				P						F
Unit 13				P						
Unit 14				P						
Unit 15	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P
Unit 16				P			P	P		
Unit 17	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P
Unit 18	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P

Old units		
New units	Unit 11	Unit 12
Unit 1		
Unit 2		
Unit 3		
Unit 4		
Unit 5		
Unit 6		
Unit 7		
Unit 8		
Unit 9		
Unit 10		
Unit 11		
Unit 12		
Unit 13	F	
Unit 14		F
Unit 15	P	P
Unit 16		P
Unit 17	P	P
Unit 18	P	P

#### KEY

P - Partial mapping (some topics from the old unit appear in the new unit)

F - Full mapping (topics in old unit match new unit exactly or almost exactly)

X - Full mapping + new (all the topics from the old unit appear in the new unit, but new unit also contains new topic(s))

## BTEC First in Art and Design legacy (specification end date 31/08/2010)/BTEC First in Art and Design new (specification start date 01/09/2009) – unit mapping in depth

New units		Old units		Mapping/comments (new topics in <i>italics</i> )
Number	Name	Number	Name	
<b>Unit 1</b>	Contextual References in Art and Design	<b>2</b>	Contextual References in Art and Design	
<b>Unit 2</b>	2D Visual Communication	<b>1</b>	2D and 3D Visual Communication	
<b>Unit 3</b>	3D Visual Communication	<b>1</b>	2D and 3D Visual Communication	
<b>Unit 4</b>	Using Ideas to Explore, Develop and Produce Art and Design	<b>3, 4</b>	Explore and Develop Art and Design Ideas Produce an Art and Design Outcome	The new Unit 4 fully covers the content of the old Unit 3 and also addresses elements of the old Unit 4
<b>Unit 5</b>	Building an Art and Design Portfolio	<b>1-4</b>	See above	The new Unit 5 partially covers the content of old Units 1-4 and also introduces new content
<b>Unit 6</b>	Working in the Art and Design Industry	<b>2, 4</b>	See above	The new Unit 6 partially covers the content of old Units 2 and 4 and also introduces new content
<b>Unit 7</b>	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	<b>5</b>	Working with Graphic Design Briefs	
<b>Unit 8</b>	Working with Photography Briefs	<b>6</b>	Working with Photography Briefs	In the new Unit 8, coverage of digital and/or film-based photography is merged into one learning outcome. New content is introduced, reflecting on the work produced
<b>Unit 9</b>	Working With Fashion Design Briefs	<b>7</b>	Working with Fashion Design Briefs	
<b>Unit 10</b>	Working with Textiles Briefs	<b>8</b>	Working with Textiles Briefs	
<b>Unit 11</b>	Working with 3D Design Briefs	<b>9</b>	Working with 3D Design Briefs	
<b>Unit 12</b>	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	<b>10</b>	Working with Interactive Media Briefs	
<b>Unit 13</b>	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	<b>11</b>	Working with Visual Arts Briefs	
<b>Unit 14</b>	Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	<b>12</b>	Working with 3D Design Crafts Briefs	

New units		Old units		Mapping/comments (new topics in italics)
Number	Name	Number	Name	
<b>Unit 15</b>	Working with Digital Art and Design Briefs	<b>1-12</b>	See above	The new Unit 15 addresses specialist digital art and design content but could potentially address digital elements of any old unit
<b>Unit 16</b>	Working with Accessory Briefs	<b>4, 7, 8, 12</b>	See above	The new Unit 16 primarily addresses specialist areas of fashion design but also relates to areas of textiles and design crafts
<b>Unit 17</b>	Working with Moving Image Briefs	<b>1- 12</b>	See above	The new Unit 17 addresses specialist moving image content but could potentially address moving image elements of any old unit
<b>Unit 18</b>	Working with Site-specific Briefs	<b>1-12</b>	See above	The new Unit 18 addresses specialist site specific content but could potentially address site specific elements of any old unit
<b>All</b>	See above	<b>4</b>	Produce an Art and Design Outcome	All new units have content relating to the production of art and design outcomes

# Annexe G

## Examples of calculation of qualification grade above pass grade

Pearson will automatically calculate the qualification grade for your learners when your learner unit grades are submitted.

The generic examples below demonstrate how the qualification grade above pass is calculated using the following two tables which are also shown in the section earlier on in the specification *Calculation of the qualification grades above pass grade*.

## Points available for credits achieved at different levels and unit grades

The table below shows the number of points scored per credit at the unit level and grade.

Unit level	Points per credit		
	Pass	Merit	Distinction
Level 1	3	4	5
Level 2	5	6	7
Level 3	7	8	9

Learners who achieve the correct number of points within the ranges shown in the 'qualification grade' table below will achieve the qualification merit or distinction or distinction\* grade.

Qualification	Points range above pass grade		
	Merit	Distinction	Distinction*
BTEC Level 2 Certificate	85-94	95-99	100 and above
BTEC Level 2 Extended Certificate	170-189	190-199	200 and above
BTEC Level 2 Diploma	340-379	380-399	400 and above

### Example 1

#### Achievement of pass qualification grade

A learner completing a 15-credit Pearson BTEC Level 2 Certificate achieves the credit required to gain a pass qualification grade and does not achieve the points to gain a merit grade.

	Level	Credit	Grade	Grade points	Points per unit = credit x grade
Unit 1	2	5	Pass	5	$5 \times 5 = 25$
Unit 2	2	5	Pass	5	$5 \times 5 = 25$
Unit 3	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Qualification grade totals		15	Pass		80

### Example 2

#### Achievement of merit qualification grade

A learner completing a 15-credit Pearson BTEC Level 2 Certificate achieves the points required to gain a merit qualification grade.

	Level	Credit	Grade	Grade points	Points per unit = credit x grade
Unit 1	2	5	Pass	5	$5 \times 5 = 25$
Unit 2	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Unit 3	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Qualification grade totals		15	Merit		85

### Example 3

#### Achievement of distinction qualification grade

A learner completing a 15-credit Pearson BTEC Level 2 Certificate achieves the points required to gain a distinction qualification grade.

	Level	Credit	Grade	Grade points	Points per unit = credit x grade
Unit 1	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Unit 2	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Unit 3	2	5	Distinction	7	$5 \times 7 = 35$
Qualification grade totals		15	Distinction		95

#### Example 4

##### Achievement of merit qualification grade

A learner completing a 30-credit Pearson BTEC Level 2 Extended Certificate achieves the points required to gain a merit qualification grade.

	Level	Credit	Grade	Grade points	Points per unit = credit x grade
Unit 1	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Unit 2	2	5	Pass	5	$5 \times 5 = 25$
Unit 3	2	5	Distinction	7	$5 \times 7 = 35$
Unit 6	2	10	Pass	5	$10 \times 5 = 50$
Unit 8	3	5	Pass	7	$5 \times 7 = 35$
<b>Qualification grade totals</b>		<b>30</b>	<b>Merit</b>		<b>175</b>

#### Example 5

##### Achievement of merit qualification grade

A learner completing a 60-credit Pearson BTEC Level 2 Diploma achieves the points required to gain a merit qualification grade.

	Level	Credit	Grade	Grade points	Points per unit = credit x grade
Unit 1	2	5	Merit	6	$5 \times 6 = 30$
Unit 2	2	5	Pass	5	$5 \times 5 = 25$
Unit 3	2	5	Distinction	7	$5 \times 7 = 35$
Unit 6	2	10	Merit	6	$10 \times 6 = 60$
Unit 9	1	5	Merit	4	$5 \times 4 = 20$
Unit 10	2	10	Distinction	7	$10 \times 7 = 70$
Unit 11	2	10	Merit	6	$10 \times 6 = 60$
Unit 14	2	10	Merit	6	$10 \times 6 = 60$
<b>Qualification grade totals</b>		<b>60</b>	<b>Merit</b>		<b>360</b>

**December 2017**

**For information about Edexcel, BTEC or LCCI qualifications visit  
[qualifications.pearson.com](http://qualifications.pearson.com)**

**BTEC is a registered trademark of Pearson Education Limited**

**Pearson Education Limited. Registered in England and Wales No. 872828  
Registered Office: 80 Strand, London WC2R 0RL.  
VAT Reg No GB 278 537121**